



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2007 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation

RUDIMENTS
OF THE
LATIN LANGUAGE.

WITH
AN APPENDIX.

FOR THE USE OF THE EDINBURGH ACADEMY.

S. F. Charrier



EDINBURGH:
OLIVER AND BOYD, TWEEDDALE COURT.
LONDON: SIMPKIN, MARSHALL, AND CO.

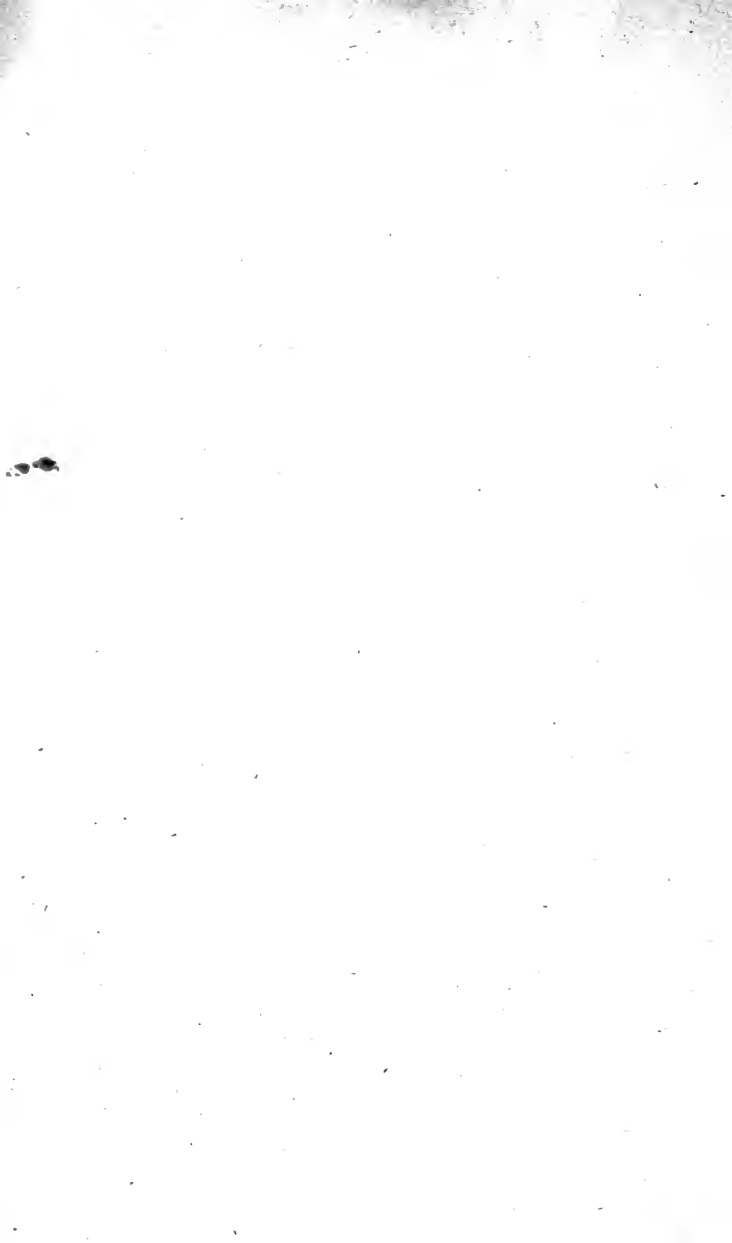
Price Two Shillings.

EDINBURGH ACADEMY CLASS BOOKS.

- RUDIMENTS OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE.** 12mo, 2s.
LATIN DELECTUS, with Vocabulary. 12mo, 3s.
RUDIMENTS OF THE GREEK LANGUAGE. 12mo, 3s. 6d.
GREEK EXTRACTS, with Vocabulary. 12mo, 3s. 6d.
SELECTA E POETIS LATINIS. 12mo, 3s.
MODERN GEOGRAPHY. 12mo, 2s. 6d.
ANCIENT GEOGRAPHY. 12mo, 3s.

ADVERTISEMENT.

IN revising the Latin Rudiments for a Fifth Edition, the attention of the Editor has been chiefly directed to the improvement of the latter part of the Appendix. He has introduced some farther remarks on Compound Verbs,—partly the result of his own investigations, and partly collected from other sources,—and has inserted Ruddiman's Rules for the Conjugation of Verbs, as the speediest and surest mode of fixing in the minds of young pupils this important part of elementary instruction. The remarks under the Rules for the Gender of Nouns have been extended and improved. For much of the additional matter which will be found under the Rules for the Quantity of Syllables, the Editor has to acknowledge his obligations to Professor Ramsay's excellent Treatise on Latin Prosody, a work in which the whole subject of Quantity and Versification has been treated with a degree of minuteness and skill which ought to recommend it to the careful study of every Teacher.



RUDIMENTS

OF THE

LATIN LANGUAGE.

LETTERS AND SYLLABLES.

THERE are twenty-five Letters in the Latin language ; a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.

These are divided into Vowels and Consonants.

Six are Vowels: a, e, i, o, u, y.

Nineteen are Consonants: b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z.

There are five Diphthongs: ae, oe,* au, eu, ei; as, aetas, poena, audio, euge, hei.

* These two are often printed thus; œ, œ; and are pronounced as simple e.

WORDS, OR PARTS OF SPEECH.

There are eight Parts of Speech: Noun, Adjective, Pronoun, Verb, Adverb, Preposition, Interjection, Conjunction.

These are divided into Declinable and Indeclinable.

Four are declinable: Noun, Adjective, Pronoun, Verb.

Four are indeclinable: Adverb, Preposition, Interjection, Conjunction.

NOUN.

A Noun, or Substantive, is the name of a person, place, or thing.

It is declined by Genders, Cases, and Numbers.

There are three Genders: Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.

There are six Cases: Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, and Ablative.

There are two Numbers: Singular and Plural.

There are five Declensions distinguished by the termination of the Genitive Singular.

GENERAL RULES.

1. Neuter Nouns have the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative, alike in both Numbers; and these Cases in the Plural end always in *a*.

2. The Vocative, generally in the Singular, and always in the Plural, is like the Nominative.

3. The Dative and Ablative Plural are alike.

4. Proper names want the Plural.

FIRST DECLENSION.

The First Declension has the Genitive and Dative Singular in *æ* diphthong.

It has four Terminations: *a, e, as, es*; *as*,

Penna, *a pen*; Penelōpe, *Penelope*; Ænēas, *Æneas*; Anchīses, *Anchises*.

PENNA, *a pen*, Substantive Feminine.

Singular.

Nom. Penn-a, *a pen.*
 Gen. Penn-æ, *of a pen.*
 Dat. Penn-æ, *to a pen.*
 Acc. Penn-am, *a pen.*
 Voc. Penn-a, *O pen.*
 Abl. Penn-a, *with a pen.*

Plural.

Nom. Penn-æ, *pens.*
 Gen. Penn-ārum, *of pens.*
 Dat. Penn-is, *to pens.*
 Acc. Penn-as, *pens.*
 Voc. Penn-æ, *O pens.*
 Abl. Penn-is, *with pens*

Ara, *an altar.* Galea, *a helmet.* Litēra, *a letter.* Toga, *a gown*

Additional Examples.

Ala, <i>a wing.</i>	Faba, <i>a bean.</i>	Ripa, <i>a bank.</i>
Arca, <i>a chest.</i>	Hora, <i>an hour.</i>	Turba, <i>a crowd.</i>
Casa, <i>a cottage.</i>	Mensa, <i>a table.</i>	Unda, <i>a wave.</i>
Causa, <i>a cause.</i>	Norma, <i>a rule.</i>	Virga, <i>a rod.</i>

Nouns in *a* and *e* are Feminine; in *as* and *es* Masculine.

RULE.—*Dea*, a goddess; *equa*, a mare; *filia*, a daughter; and *mula*, a she-mule, have sometimes *abus* in the Dative and Ablative Plural, when it is necessary to distinguish them from the masculines in *us* of the Second Declension.

Note.—The same form may be employed in some other Nouns: *as, animā, asīna, liberta, and nata*; but is seldom, if ever, found.

Rules for the Declension of Nouns derived from the Greek.

1. Greek Nouns in *as* and *a* have sometimes the Accusative, with the poets, in *an*: *as*, *Ænēas*, the son of *Anchises*.

ÆNEAS, Æneas, Subst. Masc.

<i>Sing. Nom.</i> <i>Ænēas.</i>	<i>Acc.</i> <i>Ænēam, or Ænēan.</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>Æneæ.</i>	<i>Voc.</i> <i>Ænea.</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>Æneæ.</i>	<i>Abl.</i> <i>Ænea.</i>

Borēas, the north wind.

Midas, a king of Phrygia.

Maia, the daughter of Atlas.

Ossa, a mountain in Thessaly.

2. Greek nouns in *es* have the Accusative in *en*, and the Vocative and Ablative in *e*: *as*, *Anchīses*, a celebrated *Trojan*.

ANCHISES, Anchises, Subst. Masc.

<i>Sing. Nom.</i> <i>Anchīses.</i>	<i>Acc.</i> <i>Anchīsen.</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>Anchisæ.</i>	<i>Voc.</i> <i>Anchise.</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>Anchisæ.</i>	<i>Abl.</i> <i>Anchise.</i>

Alcīdes, a name of Hercules. Pelīdes, Achilles, the son of Pelcus.

Comētes, a comet.

Tydīdes, Diomedes, the son of Tydeus.

Note.—Nouns in *es* have sometimes *ǎ* in the Vocative, and more rarely *ā*. Nouns in *tes* have *stǎ*. They also sometimes form the Accusative in *em*, and the Ablative in *a*.

3. Greek nouns in *e* have the Genitive in *es*, the Accusative in *en*, the Dative, Vocative, and Ablative in *e*: *as*, *Penelōpe*, the wife of *Ulysses*.

PENELOPE, Penelope, Subst. Fem.

<i>Sing. Nom.</i> <i>Penelōpe.</i>	<i>Acc.</i> <i>Penelōpen.</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>Penelopes.</i>	<i>Voc.</i> <i>Penelope.</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>Penelope.</i>	<i>Abl.</i> <i>Penelope.</i>

Circe, a famous sorceress.

Epitōme, an abridgment.

Cybēle, the mother of the Gods.

Grammatīce, grammar.

SECOND DECLENSION.

The Second Declension has the Genitive Singular in *i* and the Dative in *o*.

It has seven Terminations: *er, ir, ur; us, um; os, on; as,*

Puer, a boy; vir, a man; satur, full; domīnus, a lord; regnum, a kingdom; synōdos, a synod; Albion, Great Britain.

PUER, a boy, Subst. Masc.

Singular.

Nom.	Puer,	a boy.
Gen.	Puēr-i,	of a boy.
Dat.	Puer-o,	to a boy.
Acc.	Puer-um,	a boy.
Voc.	Puer,	O boy.
Abl.	Puer-o,	with a boy.

Plural.

Nom.	Puēr-i,	boys.
Gen.	Puer-ōrum,	of boys.
Dat.	Puer-is,	to boys.
Acc.	Puer-os,	boys.
Voc.	Puer-i,	O boys.
Abl.	Puer-is,	with boys.

Gener, a son-in-law. Liber, Bacchus. Mulciber, Vulcan. Vir, a man.

But most Nouns in *er* lose the *e* in the Genitive: as,

LIBER, a book, Subst. Masc.

Singular.

Nom.	Lib-er,	a book.
Gen.	Lib-ri,	of a book.
Dat.	Lib-ro,	to a book.
Acc.	Lib-rum,	a book.
Voc.	Lib-er,	O book.
Abl.	Lib-ro,	with a book.

Plural.

Nom.	Lib-ri,	books.
Gen.	Lib-rōrum,	of books.
Dat.	Lib-ris,	to books.
Acc.	Lib-ros,	books.
Voc.	Lib-ri,	O books.
Abl.	Lib-ris,	with books.

Ager, a field.

Culter, a knife.

Magister, a master.

RULES.—1. Nouns in *us* have *e* in the Vocative: as, *ventus*, *vente*; but Proper Names in *ius*, with *filius* and *genius*, have *i*: as, *Georgius*, *Georgi*.

2. *Deus* has *Deus* in the Vocative; and, in the Plural, more frequently *Dii* than *Dei*, and *Diis* than *Deis*.

Note.—*Populus*, a people, has sometimes *populus* in the Vocative.

DOMINUS, a Lord, Subst. Masc.

Singular.

Nom.	Domīn-us.
Gen.	Domin-i.
Dat.	Domin-o.
Acc.	Domin-um.
Voc.	Domin-e.
Abl.	Domin-o.

Plural.

Nom.	Domīn-i.
Gen.	Domin-ōrum.
Dat.	Domin-is.
Acc.	Domin-os.
Voc.	Domin-i.
Abl.	Domin-is.

Annus, a year. Fluvius, a river. Hortus, a garden. Radius, a ray.

REGNUM, a kingdom, Subst. Neut.

Singular.

Nom.	Regn-um.
Gen.	Regn-i.
Dat.	Regn-o.
Acc.	Regn-um.
Voc.	Regn-um.
Abl.	Regn-o.

Plural.

Nom.	Regn-a.
Gen.	Regn-ōrum.
Dat.	Regn-is.
Acc.	Regn-a.
Voc.	Regn-a.
Abl.	Regn-is.

Antrum, a cave. Astrum, a star. Donum, a gift. Jugum, a yoke.

Additional Examples.

Aper, a wild boar.
Arbiter, a judge.

Bellum, war.
Cadus, a cask.

Capra, a he-goat.
Cervus, a stag.

Collum, <i>the neck.</i>	Lupus, <i>a wolf.</i>	Ramus, <i>a branch.</i>
Equus, <i>a horse.</i>	Murus, <i>a wall.</i>	Saxum, <i>a stone.</i>
Faber, <i>an artist.</i>	Nidus, <i>a nest.</i>	Socer, <i>a father-in-law.</i>
Ficus, <i>f. a fig-tree.</i>	Ovum, <i>an egg.</i>	Telum, <i>a dart.</i>
Folium, <i>a leaf.</i>	Pomum, <i>an apple.</i>	Velum, <i>a sail.</i>
Gladius, <i>a sword.</i>	Prælium, <i>a battle.</i>	Virus, <i>n. poison.</i>

The terminations *er* and *us* are generally Masculine, and *um* is always Neuter. *Os* and *on* are Greek terminations, and are generally changed into *us* and *um*.

Greek Nouns in *os* or *us* have sometimes their Accusative singular in *on*: as, *Androgeos*, or *-us*, *Androgeus*; Gen. *Androge-o*, or *-i*; Dat. *-o*; Acc. *-on*, or *-um*; Voc. *-o*; Abl. *-o*.

Athos, *Athos*; Gen. *Ath-o*, or *-i*; Dat. *-o*; Acc. *-o*, *-on*, or *-um*; Voc. *-o*; Abl. *-o*.

Ilium, or *-um*, *Troy*; Gen. *Ili-i*; Dat. *-o*; Acc. *-on*, or *-um*, Voc. *-on*, or *-um*; Abl. *-o*.

THIRD DECLENSION.

The Third Declension has the Genitive Singular in *is*, and the Dative in *i*.

It has eleven final Letters: *a, e, o, c, d, l, n, r, s, t, x*; *as*,

Poëma, *a poem*; *sedile*, *a seat*; *sermo*, *speech*; *lac*, *milk*; *David*, *David*; *animal*, *an animal*; *pecten*, *a comb*; *pater*, *a father*; *rupes*, *a rock*; *caput*, *the head*; *rex*, *a king*.

SERMO, *speech*, Subst. Masc.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
Nom.	Sermo.	Nom.	Sermō-nes.
Gen.	Sermō-nis.	Gen.	Sermo-num.
Dat.	Sermo-ni.	Dat.	Sermo-nībus.
Acc.	Sermo-nem.	Acc.	Sermo-nes.
Voc.	Sermo.	Voc.	Sermo-nes.
Abl.	Sermo-ne.	Abl.	Sermo-nibus.

Carbo, *a coal.* Leo, *a lion.* Pavo, *a peacock.* Prædo, *a robber.*

COLOR, *a colour*, Subst. Masc.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
Nom.	Color.	Nom.	Colōr-es.
Gen.	Colōr-is.	Gen.	Color-um.
Dat.	Color-i.	Dat.	Color-ībus.
Acc.	Color-em.	Acc.	Color-es.
Voc.	Color.	Voc.	Color-es.
Abl.	Color-e.	Abl.	Color-ibus.

Honor, *honour.* Lector, *a reader.* Pastor, *a shepherd.*

MILES, a soldier, Subst. Com.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	Mil-es.	<i>Nom.</i>	Mil-ites
<i>Gen.</i>	Mil-itis.	<i>Gen.</i>	Mil-itum.
<i>Dat.</i>	Mil-iti.	<i>Dat.</i>	Mil-itibus.
<i>Acc.</i>	Mil-item.	<i>Acc.</i>	Mil-ites.
<i>Voc.</i>	Mil-es.	<i>Voc.</i>	Mil-ites.
<i>Abl.</i>	Mil-ite.	<i>Abl.</i>	Mil-itibus.

Comes, a companion. Limes, m. a limit. Trames, m. a path.

RULE.—Nouns in *es* and *is* not increasing in the Genitive Singular, have *ium* in the Genitive Plural.

Except *canis*, a dog; *panis*, bread; *vates*, a prophet; *juvĕnis*, a young man; and *volucris*, a bird.

RUPES, a rock, Subst. Fem.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	Rup-es.	<i>Nom.</i>	Rup-es.
<i>Gen.</i>	Rup-is.	<i>Gen.</i>	Rup-ium.
<i>Dat.</i>	Rup-i.	<i>Dat.</i>	Rup-ibus.
<i>Acc.</i>	Rup-em.	<i>Acc.</i>	Rup-es.
<i>Voc.</i>	Rup-es.	<i>Voc.</i>	Rup-es.
<i>Abl.</i>	Rup-e.	<i>Abl.</i>	Rup-ibus.

Classis, a fleet. Nubes, a cloud. Vitis, a vine. Vulpes, a fox.

RULE.—Nouns of one syllable in *as*, *is*, and *s* or *x* preceded by a consonant, have *ium* in the Genitive Plural.

PARS, a part, Subst. Fem.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	Pars.	<i>Nom.</i>	Part-es.
<i>Gen.</i>	Part-is.	<i>Gen.</i>	Part-ium.
<i>Dat.</i>	Part-i.	<i>Dat.</i>	Part-ibus.
<i>Acc.</i>	Part-em.	<i>Acc.</i>	Part-es.
<i>Voc.</i>	Pars.	<i>Voc.</i>	Part-es.
<i>Abl.</i>	Part-e.	<i>Abl.</i>	Part-ibus.

Vas, -dis, c. a surety. Lis, -tis, a lawsuit. Arx, -cis, a castle.

RULE.—Nouns of two or more syllables in *as* and *ns* have *um*, and sometimes *ium*: as, *cliens*, a client, *clientum*, or *clientium*.

Note.—Nouns which have *ium* in the Genitive Plural, have *es*, *eis*, or *is*, in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural.

PECTUS, the breast, Subst. Neut.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	Pect-us.	<i>Nom.</i>	Pect-ōra.
<i>Gen.</i>	Pect-ōris.	<i>Gen.</i>	Pect-orum.
<i>Dat.</i>	Pect-ori.	<i>Dat.</i>	Pect-oribus.
<i>Acc.</i>	Pect-us.	<i>Acc.</i>	Pect-ora.
<i>Voc.</i>	Pect-us.	<i>Voc.</i>	Pect-ora.
<i>Abl.</i>	Pect-ore.	<i>Abl.</i>	Pect-oribus.

Corpus, a body. Littus, a shore. Nemus, a grove. Pignus, a pledge

RULE.—Neuter Nouns in *e*, *al*, and *ar*, have *i* in the Ablative Singular; *ium* in the Genitive Plural; and *ia* in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative.

Note.—Proper Names in *e* have *e* in the Ablative: as, *Præneste*, n. a town in Italy; Ablative, *Præneste*.

SEDILE, a seat, Subst. Neut.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	Sedil-e.	<i>Nom.</i>	Sedil-ia.
<i>Gen.</i>	Sedil-is.	<i>Gen.</i>	Sedil-ium.
<i>Dat.</i>	Sedil-i.	<i>Dat.</i>	Sedil-ibus.
<i>Acc.</i>	Sedil-e.	<i>Acc.</i>	Sedil-ia.
<i>Voc.</i>	Sedil-e.	<i>Voc.</i>	Sedil-ia.
<i>Abl.</i>	Sedil-i.	<i>Abl.</i>	Sedil-ibus.

Ancile, a shield. Mantile, a towel. Mare, the sea. Rete, a net.

ANIMAL, an animal, Subst. Neut.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	Animal.	<i>Nom.</i>	Animal-ia.
<i>Gen.</i>	Animal-is.	<i>Gen.</i>	Animal-ium.
<i>Dat.</i>	Animal-i.	<i>Dat.</i>	Animal-ibus.
<i>Acc.</i>	Animal.	<i>Acc.</i>	Animal-ia.
<i>Voc.</i>	Animal.	<i>Voc.</i>	Animal-ia.
<i>Abl.</i>	Animal-i.	<i>Abl.</i>	Animal-ibus.

Cubital, a cushion. Calcar, -āris, a spur. Vectigal, a tax.

Additional Examples.

Acer, -ēris, n. a maple tree.	Homo, -īnis, m. a man.
Æstas, -ātis, f. summer.	Imāgo, -īnis, f. an image.
Arbor, -ōris, f. a tree.	Iter, itinēris, n. a journey.
Aries, ētis, m. a ram.	Lac, -tis, n. milk.
Ars, artis, f. an art.	Lapis, -īdis, m. a stone.
Canon, -ōnis, m. a rule.	Laus, -dis, f. praise.
Carcer, -ēris, m. a prison.	Lex, legis, f. a law.
Cardo, -īnis, m. a hinge.	Monile, -is, n. a necklace.
Carmen, -īnis, n. a song.	Mons, -tis, m. a mountain.
Cervix, -īcis, f. the neck.	Munus, -ēris, n. a gift.
Codex, -īcis, m. a book.	Nox, noctis, f. night.
Consul, -ūlis, m. a consul.	Onus, -ēris, n. a burden.
Cor, cordis, n. the heart.	Ovile, -is, n. a sheepfold.
Crux, -ucis, f. a cross.	Pecten, -īnis, m. a comb.
Cubile, -is, n. a couch.	Regio, -ōnis, f. a country.
Dens, -tis, m. a tooth.	Salar, -āris, m. a trout.
Dos, dotis, f. a dowry.	Serpens, -tis, c. a serpent.
Femur, -ōris, n. the thigh.	Toral, -ālis, n. a bedcover.
Formīdo, -īnis, f. fear.	Trabs, -abis, f. a beam.
Fornax, -ācis, f. a furnace.	Turris, -is, f. a tower.
Frater, -tris, m. a brother.	Uter, utris, m. a bottle.
Fur, furis, e. a thief.	Virgo, -īnis, f. a virgin.
Genus, -ēris, n. a kind.	Voluptas, -ātis, f. pleasure.
Hæres, -ēdis, c. an heir.	Vulnus, -ēris, n. a wound.

GREEK NOUNS through all the Cases.

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc	Abl.
Sing. Lamp-as ;	-ādis, or -ādos ;	-adi ;	-adem, or -ada ;	-as ;	-ade.
Plur. Lamp-ādes ;	-adum ;	-adibus ;	-ades, or -adas ;	-ades ;	-adibus
Sing. Tro-as ;	-ādis, or -ādos ;	-adi ;	-adem, or -ada ;	-as ;	-ade.
Plur. Tro-ādes ;	-adum ;	-adibus, -āsi, or -āsin ;	-ades, or -adas ;	-ades ;	-adibus, -asi, or -asin
Sing. Tros ;	Trois ;	Troi ;	Troem, or Troa ;	Tros ;	Troc.
Sing. Phyll-is ;	-idis, or -idos ;	-idi ;	-idem, or -ida ;	-i, or -is ;	-ide.
Sing. Par-is ;	-idis, or -idos ;	-idi ;	-idem, -im, or -in ;	-i ;	-ide.
Sing. Chlam-ys, -ydis, or ydos ;	-ydi ;	-ydem, or -yda ;	-ys ;	-yde.	
Sing. Cap-ys ;	-yis, or -yos ;	-yi ;	-ym, or -yn ;	-y ;	-ye, or -y.
Sing. Hærēs-is ;	-is, or -eos ;	-i ;	-im, or -in ;	-i ;	-i.
Sing. Oroph-eus ;	-eos, -ēi, or -ei ;	-ēi, or -ei ;	-ea ;	-eu ;	-eo.
Sing. Did-o ;	-us, or -ōnis ;	-o, or -oni ;	-o, or -onem ;	-o ;	-o, or -one.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

The Fourth Declension has the Genitive Singular in *us*, and the Dative in *ui*.

It has two Terminations : *us* and *u* ; as, *Fructus, fruit* ; *Cornu, a horn*.

FRUCTUS, *fruit*, Subst. Masc.

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	Fruct-us.	Nom.	Fruct-us.
Gen.	Fruct-ūs.	Gen.	Fruct-uum.
Dat.	Fruct-ui.	Dat.	Fruct-ibus.
Acc.	Fruct-um.	Acc.	Fruct-us.
Voc.	Fruct-us.	Voc.	Fruct-us.
Abl.	Fruct-u.	Abl.	Fruct-ibus.

Casus, *a fall*. Currus, *a chariot*. Fluctus, *a wave*. Gradus, *a step*.

CORNU, *a horn*, Subst. Neut.

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	Cornu.	Nom.	Corn-ua.
Gen.	Cornu.	Gen.	Corn-uum.
Dat.	Cornu.	Dat.	Corn-ibus.
Acc.	Cornu.	Acc.	Corn-ua.
Voc.	Cornu.	Voc.	Corn-ua.
Abl.	Cornu.	Abl.	Corn-ibus.

Gelu, *ice*. Genu, *the knee*. Tonitru, *thunder*. Veru, *a spit*.

Additional Examples.

Flatus, <i>a blast</i> .	Motus, <i>a motion</i> .	Ritus, <i>a ceremony</i> .
Ictus, <i>a stroke</i> .	Nutus, <i>a nod</i> .	Sinus, <i>a bosom</i> .
Manus, <i>f. the hand</i> .	Passus, <i>a pace</i> .	Situs, <i>a situation</i> .

Nouns in *us* of the Fourth Declension are generally Masculine, and those in *u* are all Neuter and indeclinable in the Singular Number.

RULE.—*Acus*, a needle; *arcus*, a bow; *artus*, a joint; *genu*, the knee; *lacus*, a lake; *partus*, a birth; *pecu*, cattle; *portus*, a harbour; *specus*, a den; *tribus*, a tribe; and *veru*, a spit; have *ūsus* in the Dative and Ablative Plural. *Portus*, *genu*, and *veru*, have likewise *ūsus*.

Domus, a house, is partly of the Second, and partly of the Fourth Declension: thus,

DOMUS, a house, Subst. Fem.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> Domus.	<i>Nom.</i> Domus.
<i>Gen.</i> Domūs, or -mī.	<i>Gen.</i> Domuum, or -ōrum.
<i>Dat.</i> Domui, or -mo.	<i>Dat.</i> Domībus.
<i>Acc.</i> Domum.	<i>Acc.</i> Domus, or -os.
<i>Voc.</i> Domus.	<i>Voc.</i> Domus.
<i>Abl.</i> Domo.	<i>Abl.</i> Domibus.

Note.—*Domūs*, in the Genitive, signifies *of a house*; and *domi* is only used to signify *at home*, or *of home*.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

The Fifth Declension has the Genitive and Dative Singular in *ēi*.

It has one Termination: *es*; as *Dies*, a day.

DIES, a day, Subst. Masc. or Fem.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> Di-es.	<i>Nom.</i> Di-es.
<i>Gen.</i> Di-ēi.	<i>Gen.</i> Di-ērūm.
<i>Dat.</i> Di-ei.	<i>Dat.</i> Di-ēbus.
<i>Acc.</i> Di-em.	<i>Acc.</i> Di-es.
<i>Voc.</i> Di-es.	<i>Voc.</i> Di-es.
<i>Abl.</i> Di-e.	<i>Abl.</i> Di-ebus.

Res, *ēi*, f. a thing. *Glacies*, f. ice. *Macies*, f. leanness.

FACIES, a face, Subst. Fem.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> Faci-es.	<i>Nom.</i> Faci-es.
<i>Gen.</i> Faci-ēi.	<i>Gen.</i> —
<i>Dat.</i> Faci-ei.	<i>Dat.</i> —
<i>Acc.</i> Faci-em.	<i>Acc.</i> Faci-es.
<i>Voc.</i> Faci-es.	<i>Voc.</i> Faci-es.
<i>Abl.</i> Faci-e.	<i>Abl.</i> —

Effigies, an image. *Series*, an order. *Spes*, -ēi, hope.

Additional Examples.

<i>Acies</i> , the edge.	<i>Fides</i> , -ēi, faith.	<i>Rabies</i> , madness.
<i>Caries</i> , rottenness.	<i>Materies</i> , matter.	<i>Species</i> , an appearance.

Dies and *res* are the only Nouns of the Fifth Declension which have the Plural complete; *acies*, *effigies*, *facies*, *series*, *species*, and *spes*, have the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative; the others have no plural.

Nouns of the Fifth Declension are all Feminine, except *dies*, which is Masc. or Fem. in the Singular, Masc. only in the Plural; and *meridies*, the mid-day, or noon, which is Masculine only, and does not occur in the Plural.

ADJECTIVE.

An Adjective is a word added to a Noun, to express its quality.

Adjectives are either of the First and Second Declension, or of the Third only.

Adjectives of three Terminations* are of the First and Second Declension; but Adjectives of one or two Terminations are of the Third.

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION.

Adjectives of the First and Second Declension have the Masculine in *us* or *er*; the Feminine always in *a*; and the Neuter always in *um*; *as*,

Bonus for the Masc. *bona* for the Fem. *bonum* for the Neut. good.

BONUS, BONA, BONUM, good, Adj.

Singular.			Plural.			
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Bon-us,	-a,	-um.	Nom.	Bon-i,	-æ, -a.
Gen.	Bon-i,	-æ,	-i.	Gen.	Bon-ōrum,	-ārum, -ōrum.
Dat.	Bon-o,	-æ,	-o.	Dat.	Bon-is,	-is, -is.
Acc.	Bon-um,	-am,	-um.	Acc.	Bon-os,	-as, -a.
Voc.	Bon-e,	-a,	-um.	Voc.	Bon-i,	-æ, -a.
Abl.	Bon-o,	-a,	-o.	Abl.	Bon-is,	-is, -is.
	Altus, high.	Carus, dear.	Durus, hard.	Lætus, joyful.		

* Except eleven, *acer*, sharp; *alūcer*, cheerful; *campester*, belonging to a plain; *celēber*, famous; *celer*, swift; *equester*, belonging to a horse; *paluster*, marshy; *pedester*, on foot; *salūber*, wholesome; *sylvester*, woody; *volūcer*, swift; which are of the Third, and have the Masculine in *er* or *is*, the Feminine in *is*, and the Neuter in *e*.

TENER, TENERA, TENERUM, *tender*, Adj.

Singular.

Plural.

M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Tener,	-a,	-um.	N. Tenēr-i,	-æ,	-a.
G. Tenēr-i,	-æ,	-i.	G. Tener-ōrum,	-ārum,	-ōrum.
D. Tener-o,	-æ,	-o.	D. Tener-is,	-is,	-is.
A. Tener-um,	-am	-um.	A. Tener-os,	-as,	-a.
V. Tener,	-a,	-um.	V. Tener-i,	-æ,	-a.
A. Tener-o,	-a,	-o.	A. Tener-is,	-is,	-is.

Asper, *rough*. Dexter, *right*. Liber, *free*. Miser, *wretched*

Also all the compounds of *gero* and *fero*: as, *laniger*, bearing wool; *opifer*, bringing help.

But most Adjectives in *er* lose the *e*: as,

ATER, ATRA, ATRUM, *black*, Adj.

Singular.

Plural.

M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Ater,	atra,	atrum.	N. Atri,	atræ,	atra.
G. Atri,	atræ,	atri.	G. Atrōrum,	atrārum,	atrōrum
D. Atro,	atræ,	atro.	D. Atris,	atris,	atris.
A. Atrum,	atram,	atrum.	A. Atros,	atras,	atra.
V. Ater,	atra,	atrum.	V. Atri,	atræ,	atra.
A. Atro,	atra,	atro.	A. Atris,	atris,	atris.

Niger, *black*. Pulcher, *fair*. Ruber, *red*. Sacer, *sacred*

Additional Examples.

Æger, <i>sick</i> . Gen. -ri.	Longus, <i>long</i> ,	Prosper, <i>prosperous</i> .
Lacer, <i>torn</i> .	Macer, <i>lean</i> . Gen. -ri,	Satur, <i>full</i> .
Latus, <i>broad</i> ,	Novus, <i>new</i> .	Verus, <i>true</i> .

The following Adjectives have *ius* in the Genitive Singular, and *i* in the Dative:—

Alius, <i>another of many</i> .	Solus, <i>alone</i> .	Uterlibet, <i>which of the two you please</i> .
Alter, <i>the other of two</i> .	Totus, <i>whole</i> .	Uterque, <i>both</i> .
Alterūter, <i>the one or the other</i> .	Ullus, <i>any</i> .	Utervis, <i>which of the two you please</i> .
Neuter, <i>neither</i> .	Unus, <i>one</i> .	
Nullus, <i>none</i> .	Uter, <i>whether</i> .	

TOTUS, TOTA, TOTUM, *whole*, Adj.

Singular.

Plural.

M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Tot-us,	-a,	-um.	N. Tot-i,	-æ,	-a.
G. Tot-ius,	-ius,	-ius.	G. Tot-ōrum,	-ārum,	-ōrum.
D. Tot-i,	-i,	-i.	D. Tot-is,	-is,	-is.
A. Tot-um,	-am,	-um.	A. Tot-os,	-as,	-a.
V. Tot-e,	-a,	-um.	V. Tot-i,	-æ,	-a.
A. Tot-o,	-a,	-o.	A. Tot-is,	-is,	-is.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

✓ RULES.—1. Adjectives of the Third Declension have *e* or *i* in the Ablative Singular; but if the Neuter be in *e*, the Ablative has *i* only.

2. The Genitive Plural ends in *ium*, and the Neuter of the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative, in *ia*.

3. Comparatives have *um* in the Genitive Plural, and *a* in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Neuter.

1. Of one Termination.

FELIX, happy, Adj.

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Fel-ix,	-ix,	-ix.	N. Fel-ices,	-ices,	-īcia.
G. Fel-īcis,	-īcis,	-īcis.	G. Fel-icium,	-icium,	-icium.
D. Fel-ici,	-ici,	-ici.	D. Fel-icibus,	-icibus,	-icibus.
A. Fel-icem,	-icem,	-ix.	A. Fel-ices,	-ices,	-īcia.
V. Fel-ix,	-ix,	-ix.	V. Fel-ices,	-ices,	-īcia.
A. Fel-ice, or -ici, &c.			A. Fel-icibus,	-icibus,	-icibus.

Ingens, -entis, huge. Trux, -ucis, cruel. Velox, -ōcis, swift

2. Of two Terminations.

MITIS, MITE, meek, Adj.

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Mitis,	mitis,	mite.	N. Mites,	mites,	mitia.
G. Mitis,	mitis,	mitis.	G. Mitium,	mitium,	mitium.
D. Miti,	miti,	miti.	D. Mitibus,	mitibus,	mitibus.
A. Mitem,	mitem,	mite.	A. Mites,	mites,	mitia.
V. Mitis,	mitis,	mite.	V. Mites,	mites,	mitia.
A. Miti,	miti,	miti.	A. Mitibus,	mitibus,	mitibus.

Brevis, short. Fortis, brave. Gravis, heavy. Mollis, soft.

MITIOR, MITIUS, more meek, Adj.

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Miti-or,	-or,	-us.	N. Miti-ōres,	-ōres,	-ōra.
G. Miti-ōris,	-ōris,	-ōris.	G. Miti-orum,	-orum,	-orum.
D. Miti-ori,	-ori,	-ori.	D. Miti-oribus,	-oribus,	-oribus.
A. Miti-orem,	-orem,	-us.	A. Miti-ores,	-ores,	-ora.
V. Miti-or,	-or,	-us.	V. Miti-ores,	-ores,	-ora.
A. Miti-ore, or -ori, &c.			A. Miti-oribus,	-oribus,	-oribus.

Brevior, shorter; Fortior, braver; Mollior, softer; and all other Comparatives.

3. Of three Terminations.

ACER, or ACRI, ACRE, sharp, Adj.

Singular.

Plural.

M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. A-cer, or -cris,	-cris,	-cre.	N. A-cres,	-cres,	-cria.
G. A-cris,	-cris,	-cris.	G. A-crium,	-crium,	-crium.
D. A-cri,	-cri,	-cri.	D. A-cribus,	-cribus,	-cribus.
A. A-crem,	-crem,	-cre.	A. A-cres,	-cres,	-cria.
V. A-cer, or -cris,	-cris,	-cre.	V. A-cres,	-cres,	-cria.
A. A-cri,	-cri,	-cri.	A. A-cribus,	-cribus,	-cribus.

Alācer, or alacris, cheerful, &c. See page 10.

Additional Examples.

Atrox, -ōcis, cruel.	Elēgans, -tis, elegant.	Tristis, sad.
Audax, -ācis, bold.	Ferox, -ōcis, fierce.	Turpis, base.
Clemens, -tis, gentle.	Levis, light.	Utilis, useful.
Dulcis, sweet.	Recens, -tis, fresh.	Vilis, worthless.

Adjectives and Substantives to be declined together, and varied through the different degrees of comparison.

Parva casa, a small cottage.	Cæcamens, a blinded understanding.
Clarus poëta, a famous poet.	Alta arbor, a high tree.
Pulchra filia, a beautiful daughter.	Sacrum poëma, a sacred poem.
Dulce pomum, a sweet apple.	Inepta res, a foolish thing.
Docilis puer, a docile boy.	Minax fluctus, a threatening wave.
Breve ævum, a short life.	Priscus mos, an ancient custom.
Capax antrum, a capacious den.	Calida æstas, a warm summer.
Magnum opus, a large work.	Tutus portus, a safe harbour.
Tener pes, a tender foot.	Volūcris ala, a swift wing.
Serēnus dies, a clear day.	Libëra palus, a free marsh.
Densa nubes, a thick cloud.	Solers vir, an ingenious man.
Acūta acus, a sharp needle.	Sublimis arx, a lofty castle.
Valīda manus, a strong hand.	Mœsta vox, a sorrowful voice.
Longa pinus, a tall pine.	Ferus draco, a cruel dragon.
Ferax ager, a fertile field.	Cava navis, a hollow ship.
Fidus pastor, a faithful shepherd.	Ardua turris, a lofty tower.
Potens dea, a powerful goddess.	Magna dos, a large dowry.
Nova opinio, a new opinion.	Unus niger bos, one black ox.
Nobile carmen, a noble poem.	Ænea lampas, a brazen lamp.
Antīqua urbs, an ancient city.	Fortis heros, a brave hero.
Rarum rete, a thin net.	Militāris chlamys, a military cloak.
Fessus advēna, a wearied stranger.	Culpātus Paris, wicked Paris.
Gelīdus fons, a cold fountain.	Miser Tros, a miserable Trojan.
Acris acies, a sharp edge.	Infelix Dido, unhappy Dido.

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives which signify Number, are divided into four classes: *Cardinal*, denoting number simply; *Ordinal*, denot-

ing the place or number in succession; *Distributive*, denoting how many to each: and *Multiplicative*, denoting how many fold.

The *Cardinal*, or *Principal* Numbers are:

Unus, <i>one</i> .	Triginta, <i>thirty</i> .
Duo, <i>two</i> .	Quadraginta, <i>forty</i> .
Tres, <i>three</i> .	Quinquaginta, <i>fifty</i> .
Quatuor, <i>four</i> .	Sexaginta, <i>sixty</i> .
Quinque, <i>five</i> .	Septuaginta, <i>seventy</i> .
Sex, <i>six</i> .	Octoginta, <i>eighty</i> .
Septem, <i>seven</i> .	Nonaginta, <i>ninety</i> .
Octo, <i>eight</i> .	Centum, <i>a hundred</i> .
Novem, <i>nine</i> .	Ducenti, -æ, -a, <i>two hundred</i> .
Decem, <i>ten</i> .	Trecenti, -æ, -a, <i>three hundred</i> .
Undĕcim, <i>eleven</i> .	Quadringenti, <i>four hundred</i> .
Duodĕcim, <i>twelve</i> .	Quingenti, <i>five hundred</i> .
Tredĕcim, <i>thirteen</i> .	Sexcenti, <i>six hundred</i> .
Quatuordĕcim, <i>fourteen</i> .	Septingenti, <i>seven hundred</i> .
Quindĕcim, <i>fifteen</i> .	Octingenti, <i>eight hundred</i> .
Sexdĕcim, <i>sixteen</i> .	Nongenti, <i>nine hundred</i> .
Septemdĕcim, <i>seventeen</i> .	Mille, <i>a thousand</i> .
Octodĕcim, <i>eighteen</i> .	Duo millia, or
Novemdĕcim, <i>nineteen</i> .	Bis mille,
Viginti, <i>twenty</i> .	Decem millia, or
Viginti unus, or	Decies mille,
Unus et Viginti,	Viginti millia, or
Viginti duo, or	Vicies mille,
Duo et Viginti,	

Eighteen and *nineteen* are more properly expressed by *duodeviginti*, and *undeviginti*; from which *Ordinals*, *Distributives*, and *Adverbs*, are likewise formed. The same form may be employed in the corresponding numbers of each of the other decades: as, *duodetriginta*, twenty-eight; *undetriginta*, twenty-nine; &c.

The *Cardinal* Numbers, except *unus* and *mille*, want the *Singular*.

Unus is not used in the *Plural*, except when joined with a substantive which wants the *Singular*: as, *una mœnia*, one wall; or when several particulars are considered as one whole: as, *una vestimenta*, one suit of clothes.

Duo, *two*, and *TRES*, *three*, are thus declined:

	<i>Plural.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>		
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>		<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i>	Duo,	duæ,	duo.	<i>N.</i>	Tres,	tres,	tria.
<i>G.</i>	Duōrum,	duārum,	duōrum.	<i>G.</i>	Trium,	trium,	trium.
<i>D.</i>	Duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus.	<i>D.</i>	Tribus,	tribus,	tribus.
<i>A.</i>	Duos, -o,	duas,	duo.	<i>A.</i>	Tres,	tres,	tria.
<i>V.</i>	Duo,	duæ,	duo.	<i>V.</i>	Tres,	trēs,	tria.
<i>A.</i>	Duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus.	<i>A.</i>	Tribus,	tribus,	tribus.

Ambo, both, is declined as *duo*.

All the *Cardinal* Numbers from *quatuor* to *centum* inclusive, are indeclinable; and, from *centum* to *mille*, they are declined as the Plural of *bonus*.

Mille, when placed before a Genitive Plural, is a Substantive indeclinable in the Singular, and, in the Plural, declined *millia*, *millium*, *millibus*, &c., but, when it has a Substantive joined to it in any other case, it is a Plural Adjective indeclinable.

<i>Ordinal.</i>	<i>Distributive.</i>	<i>Numeral Adverbs.</i>
1. primus, -a, -um, <i>first.</i>	singŭli, -æ, -a, <i>one by one.</i>	semel, <i>once.</i>
2. secundus, <i>second.</i>	bini, <i>two by two.</i>	bis, <i>twice.</i>
3. tertius, <i>third.</i>	terni, <i>three by three.</i>	ter, <i>thrice.</i>
4. quartus, &c.	quaterni, &c.	quater, <i>four times.</i>
5. quintus.	quini.	quinqüies, &c.
6. sextus.	seni.	sexies.
7. septimus.	septēni.	septies.
8. octāvus.	octōni.	octies.
9. nonus.	novēni.	novies.
10. decimus.	deni.	decies.
11. undecimus.	undēni.	undecies.
12. duodecimus.	duodēni.	duodecies.
13. decimus tertius.	tredēni, terni deni.	tredecies.
14. decimus quartus.	quaterni deni.	quatuordecies.
15. decimus quintus.	quindēni.	quindecies.
16. decimus sextus.	seni deni.	sexdecies.
17. decimus septimus.	septēni deni.	decies et septies.
18. decimus octāvus.	octōni deni.	decies et octies.
19. decimus nonus.	novēni deni.	decies et novies.
20. vicesimus, vicesimus.	vicēni.	vicies.
21. vicesimus primus.	vicēni singŭli.	vicies semel.
30. trigesimus, tricesimus.	tricēni.	tricies.
40. quadragesimus.	quadragēni.	quadragies.
50. quinquagesimus.	quingūagēni.	quingūagies.
60. sexagesimus.	sexagēni.	sexagies.
70. septuagesimus.	septuagēni.	septuagies.
80. octogesimus.	octogēni.	octogies.
90. nonagesimus.	nonagēni.	nonagies.
100. centesimus.	centēni.	centies.
200. ducentesimus.	ducēni.	ducenties.
300. trecentesimus.	trecentēni.	trecenties.
400. quadringentesimus.	quater centēni.	quadringenties.
500. quingentesimus.	quinqüies centēni.	quingenties.
600. sexcentesimus.	sexies centēni.	sexcenties.
700. septingentesimus.	septies centēni.	septingenties.
800. octingentesimus.	octies centēni.	octingenties.
900. nongentesimus.	novies centēni.	nongenties.
1000. millesimus.	millēni.	millies.
2000. bis millesimus.	bis millēni.	bis millies.

The Multiplicative Numbers are *simplex*, simple; *duplex*, double; *triplex*, triple; *quadruplex*, fourfold, &c.

Note.—The *Distributive* Number, when used in the sense of the Cardinal, is often found in the Singular: as, *centena arbore*, for *centum arboribus*, VIRG.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

✓ Those Adjectives only can be compared whose signification can be increased or diminished.

There are three degrees of Comparison: Positive, Comparative, and Superlative.

The Positive is an Adjective of the First and Second Declension, or of the Third only; the Comparative is always of the Third; the Superlative is always of the First and Second.

RULES.—1. The Comparative is formed from the first case of the Positive in *i*, by adding *or* for the Masculine and Feminine, and *us* for the Neuter: as,

Doctus, learned, Gen. *docti*; Comparative, *docti-or* for the Masc. *docti-or* for the Fem. *docti-us* for the Neuter, more learned.

Mitis, meek, Dat. *miti*; Comparative, *miti-or* for the Masc. *miti-or* for the Fem. *miti-us* for the Neuter, more meek.

2. The Superlative is formed from the first case of the Positive in *i* by adding *ssimus*: as,

Gen. *Docti*; Superlative, *docti-ssimus*, -a, -um, most learned.
Dat. *Miti*; Sup. *miti-ssimus*, -a, -um, most meek.

3. If the Positive end in *er*, the Superlative is formed by adding *rimus* to the Nominative Singular Masculine: as,

Nom. *Pulcher*, fair; Sup. *pulcher-rimus*, -a, -um, most fair.
Nom. *Pauper*, poor; Sup. *pauper-rimus*, -a, -um, most poor.

<i>Pos.</i>		<i>Comp.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>
Firmus, <i>strong</i> ;	Gen. -i,	Firmior,	Firmissimus.
Fortis, <i>brave</i> ;	Dat. -i,	Fortior,	Fortissimus.
Liber, <i>free</i> ;	Gen. -i,	Liberior,	Liberrimus.
Piger, <i>slow</i> ;	Gen. -ri,	Pigrior,	Pigerrimus.
Prudens, <i>wise</i> ;	Dat. -ti,	Prudentior,	Prudentissimus.
Velox, <i>swift</i> ;	Dat. -ci,	Velocior,	Velocissimus.

IRREGULAR COMPARISONS.

<i>Pos.</i>	<i>Comp.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>	<i>Pos.</i>	<i>Comp.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>
Bonus,	Melior,	Optimus,	Good,	better,	best.
Magnus,	Major,	Maximus,	Great,	greater,	greatest.
Malus,	Pejor,	Pessimus,	Bad,	worse,	worst.
Multus,	Plus, n.	Plurimus,	Much,	more,	most.
Parvus,	Minor,	Minimus,	Little,	less,	least.

Note.—*Plus* is used only in the Neuter Gender in the Singular; it is regular in the Plural, and has *plura*; and sometimes *pluria*, in the Nom. Acc. and Voc. Neuter.

See Appendix, page 105. L

Different kinds of Nouns and Adjectives.

A *Collective Noun* signifies “many” in the Singular number: as, *populus*, a people; *exercitus*, an army.

An *Abstract Noun* expresses the quality of an Adjective: as, *bonitas*, goodness, from *bonus*, good. Abstract Nouns commonly end in *a*, *as*, or *do*.

A *Patronymic Noun* is generally derived from the name of the father: as, *Priamides*, the son of Priam. The poets derive them also from some other remarkable person of the family, or from the founder of a nation: as, *Æacides*, the son, grandson, or one of the descendants of Æacus; *Romulidæ*, the Romans, from *Romulus*. Patronymics of men end in *des*; of women in *is*, *as*, and *ne*. Those in *des* and *ne* are of the First Declension, and those in *is* and *as* are of the Third.

A *Diminutive Noun*, or Adjective, expresses a diminution, or lessening of the signification of the word from which it is derived: as, *libellus*, a little book, from *liber*; *parvulus*, very little, from *parvus*. Diminutives generally end in *lus*, *la*, or *lum*; and the Nouns are usually of the same gender with their primitives.

A *Verbal Noun*, or Adjective, is derived from a Verb: as, *amor*, love; *amabilis*, lovely, from *amo*. Verbal Nouns commonly end in *is*, *io*, *or*, *men*, *us*, or *ura*; and Adjectives in *ax*, or *ilis*.

An *Interrogative* word is used to ask a question: as, *uter*, which of the two? *quis*, who? *cur*, why? These words, when they do not ask a question, are called *Indefinites*.

PRONOUN.

A Pronoun is a word which supplies the place of a Noun.

There are eighteen simple Pronouns: *Ego*, *tu*, *sui*;

ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, quis, qui; meus, tuus, suus, noster vester; nostras, vestras, and cujas.

Three of these are Substantives: *ego, tu, sui*; the other fifteen are Adjectives.

Ego, I; Plur. *we.*

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	Ego, I.	Nom.	Nos, <i>we.</i>
Gen.	Mei, <i>of me.</i>	Gen.	Nostrum, or nostri, <i>of us.</i>
Dat.	Mihi, <i>to me.</i>	Dat.	Nobis, <i>to us.</i>
Acc.	Me, <i>me.</i>	Acc.	Nos, <i>us.</i>
Voc.	_____	Voc.	_____
Abl.	Me, <i>with me.</i>	Abl.	Nobis, <i>with us.</i>

Tu, thou, or you; Plur. *ye, or you.*

Singular.		Plural.	
N.	Tu, thou, or you.	N.	Vos, <i>ye, or you.</i>
G.	Tui, <i>of thee, or you.</i>	G.	Vestrum, or vestri, <i>of you.</i>
D.	Tibi, <i>to thee, or you.</i>	D.	Vobis, <i>to you.</i>
A.	Te, <i>thee, or you.</i>	A.	Vos, <i>you.</i>
V.	Tu, <i>O thou, or you.</i>	V.	Vos, <i>O ye, or you.</i>
A.	Te, <i>with thee, or you.</i>	A.	Vobis, <i>with you.</i>

SUI, *of himself, of herself, of itself*; Plur. *of themselves.*

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	_____	Nom.	_____
Gen.	Sui, <i>of himself, &c.</i>	Gen.	Sui, <i>of themselves.</i>
Dat.	Sibi, <i>to himself, &c.</i>	Dat.	Sibi, <i>to themselves.</i>
Acc.	Se, <i>himself, &c.</i>	Acc.	Se, <i>themselves.</i>
Voc.	_____	Voc.	_____
Abl.	Se, <i>with himself, &c.</i>	Abl.	Se, <i>with themselves.</i>

ILLE, ILLA, ILLUD, *he, she, it; that*; Plur. *they, those.*

Singular.				Plural.			
	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Ille,	illa,	illud.	Nom.	Illi,	illæ,	illa.
Gen.	Illius,	illius,	illius.	Gen.	Illorum,	illarum,	illorum.
Dat.	Illi,	illi,	illi.	Dat.	Illis,	illis,	illis.
Acc.	Illum,	illam,	illud.	Acc.	Illos,	illas,	illa.
Voc.	Ille,	illa,	illud.	Voc.	Illi,	illæ,	illa.
Abl.	Illo,	illa,	illo.	Abl.	Illis,	illis,	illis.

Ipse, he himself, ipsa, she herself, ipsum, itself; Plur. *they themselves*; and *iste, he, ista, she, istud, that*; Plur. *those*; are declined as *ille*; except that *ipse* has *ipsum* in the Nom. Acc. and Voc. Singular Neuter.

HIC, HÆC, HOC, *this*; Plur. *these*.

Singular.			Plural.				
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.		
Nom.	Hic,	hæc,	hoc.	Nom.	Hi,	hæ,	hæc.
Gen.	Hujus,	hujus,	hujus.	Gen.	Horum,	harum,	horum.
Dat.	Huic,	huic,	huic.	Dat.	His,	his,	his.
Acc.	Hunc,	hanc,	hoc.	Acc.	Hos,	has,	hæc.
Voc.	Hic,	hæc,	hoc.	Voc.	Hi,	hæ,	hæc.
Abl.	Hoc,	hac,	hoc.	Abl.	His,	his,	his.

IS, EA, ID, *he, she, it*; *that*; Plur. *they, those*.

Singular.			Plural.				
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.		
Nom.	Is,	ea,	id.	Nom.	Ii,	eæ,	ea.
Gen.	Ejus,	ejus,	ejus.	Gen.	Eōrum,	eārum,	eōrum.
Dat.	Ei,	ei,	ei.	Dat.	Iis, or eis,	iis, or eis,	iis, or eis.
Acc.	Eum,	eam,	id.	Acc.	Eos,	eas,	ea.
Voc.	—	—	—	Voc.	—	—	—
Abl.	Eo,	ea,	eo.	Abl.	Iis, or eis,	iis, or eis,	iis, or eis.

QUIS, QUÆ, QUOD, or QUID, *who, which, what?*

Interrogative.

Singular.			Plural.					
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.			
N.	Quis,	quæ,	quod, or	quid	N.	Qui,	quæ,	quæ.
G.	Cujus,	cujus,	cujus.	G.	Quorum,	quarum,	quorum.	
D.	Cui,	cui,	cui.	D.	Queis, or	quibus, &c.		
A.	Quem,	quam,	quod, or	quid.	A.	Quos,	quas,	quæ.
V.	—	—	—	V.	—	—	—	
A.	Quo,	qua,	quo.	A.	Queis, or	quibus, &c.		

QUI, QUÆ, QUOD, *who, which, that*.

Relative.

Singular.			Plural.				
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.		
N.	Qui,	quæ,	quod.	N.	Qui,	quæ,	quæ.
G.	Cujus,	cujus,	cujus.	G.	Quorum,	quarum,	quorum.
D.	Cui,	cui,	cui.	D.	Queis, or	quibus, &c.	
A.	Quem,	quam,	quod.	A.	Quos,	quas,	quæ.
V.	—	—	—	V.	—	—	—
A.	Quo,	qua,	quo.	A.	Queis, or	quibus, &c.	

The Relative *qui* has also *quī* in the Ablative in all genders and in both numbers. *Qui* is sometimes used interrogatively for *quis*.

Meus, my, or mine; *tuus*, thy, or thine; *suus*, his own, her own, its own, their own; are declined like *bonus*; and *noster*, our, or ours; *vester*, your, or yours; like *ater*, of the First and

Second Declension. *Tuus, suus,* and *vester,* want the Vocative; *noster* and *meus* have it; the latter having *mi,* and sometimes *meus* in the Masculine Singular.

Nostras, of our country; *vestras,* of your country; *cujas,* of what, or which country, are declined like *felix* of the Third Declension; Gen. *nostrātis,* Dat. *nostrāti,* &c.

COMPOUND PRONOUNS.

In the Compounds of *quis* and *qui,* *quis* is sometimes the first, and sometimes the last part of the word compounded; but *qui* is always the first.

1. The Compounds of *quis,* when *quis* is put first, are *quisnam,* who? *quispiam,* *quisquam,* any one; *quisque,* every one; *quisquis,* whosoever.

QUISNAM, *who, which, what?*

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Quisnam,	quænam,	quodnam,	N. Quinam,	quænam,	quænam.
	or quidnam.				
G. Cujusnam,	cujusnam,	cujus-	G. Quorumnam,	quarumnam,	quorumnam.
	nam.				
D. Cuinam,	cuinam,	cuinam.	D. Quibusnam,	quibusnam,	quibusnam.
A. Quemnam,	quamnam,	quod-	A. Quosnam,	quasnam,	quænam.
	nam, or quidnam.				
V. ———	———	———	V. ———	———	———
A. Quonam,	quanam,	quonam.	A. Quibusnam,	quibusnam,	quibusnam.

M.	F.	N.
Quispiam,	quæpiam,	quodpiam, or quidpiam.
Quisquam,	quæquam,	quidquam, or quicquam.
Quisque,	quæque,	quodque, or quidque.
Quisquis,	———	quidquid, or quicquid.

Quisquam has *quenquam* in the Accusative, without the Feminine. The Plural is scarcely used. *Quisque* has also *quicque* for *quidque.* *Quisquis* has no Feminine termination, except in the Ablative, and the Neuter only in the Nominative and Accusative. *Quisquis* is sometimes used for the Feminine.

2. The Compounds of *quis,* when *quis* is put last, have *qua* in the Nom. Sing. Fem. and in the Nom. and Acc. Plur. Neuter. These are *aliquis,* some; *ecquis,* whether any? *nequis,* lest any; *numquis,* whether any? and *siquis,* if any. The last three are frequently read separately; *ne quis, num quis, si quis.*

ALIIQUIS, *some.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i> Aliquis, aliqua, aliquid, or aliquid.			<i>N.</i> Aliqui, aliquæ, aliqua.		
<i>G.</i> Alicujus, alicujus, alicujus.			<i>G.</i> Aliquorum, aliquarum, aliquorum.		
<i>D.</i> Alicui, alicui, alicui.			<i>D.</i> Aliquibus, aliquibus, aliquibus.		
<i>A.</i> Aliquem, aliquam, aliquid, or aliquid.			<i>A.</i> Aliquos, aliquas, aliqua.		
<i>V.</i> Aliquis, aliqua, aliquid, or aliquid.			<i>V.</i> Aliqui, aliquæ, aliqua.		
<i>A.</i> Aliquo, aliqua, aliquo.			<i>A.</i> Aliquibus, aliquibus, aliquibus.		

<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
Ecquis,	ecquæ, or ecqua,	ecquod, or ecquid.
Ne quis,	ne qua,	ne quod, or ne quid.
Num quis,	num qua,	num quod, or num quid.
Si quis,	si qua, or si quæ,	si quod, or si quid.

3. The Compounds of *qui* are *quicumque*, *whosoever*; *quidam*, *some*; *quilibet*, *quivis*, *any one*, *whom you please*.

QUICUNQUE, *whosoever, whatsoever.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i> Quicumque, quæcunque, quocunque.			<i>N.</i> Quicumque, quæcunque, quæcunque.		
<i>G.</i> Cujuscunque, cujuscunque, cujuscunque; &c.			<i>G.</i> Quorumcunque, quarumcunque, quorumcunque; &c.		

<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
Quidam,	quædam,	quoddam, or quiddam.
Quilibet,	quælibet,	quodlibet, or quidlibet.
Quivis,	quævis,	quodvis, or quidvis.

Quidam has *quendam*, *quandam*, *quoddam*, or *quiddam*, in the Accusative Singular, and *quorundam*, *quarundam*, *quorundam*, in the Genitive Plural.

Some of these are twice compounded: as, *ecquisnam*, *ecquænam*, *ecquodnam*, or *ecquidnam*, *who?* *unusquisque*, *unaqueque*, *unumquodque*, or *unumquidque*, *every one*; Gen. *uniuscujusque*, &c. The former is scarcely declined beyond the Nom. Sing.; and the latter wants the Plural.

All these compounds want the Vocative except *quisque*, *aliquis*, *quilibet*, and *quicumque*; and have seldom or never *queis*, but *quibus*, in the Dative and Ablative Plural.

IDEM, *the same*, is compounded of *is* and *dem*, and is thus declined :

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. Īdem,	eādem,	īdem.	N. Iidem,	eādem,	eādem.
G. Ejusdem,	ejusdem,	ejusdem.	G. Eorundem,	earundem,	eorundem.
D. Eīdem,	eīdem,	eīdem.	D. Iisdem, or	ēisdem,	&c.
A. Eundem,	eandem,	idem.	A. Eosdem,	easdem,	eadem.
V. Idem,	eadem,	idem.	V. Iidem,	eādem,	eadem.
A. Eōdem,	eādem,	eōdem.	A. Iisdem, or	ēisdem,	&c.

Of *iste* and *hic* is compounded *isthic*, *isthæc*, *isthoc*, or *isthuc* ; and of *ille* and *hic*, *illic*, *illæc*, *illoc*, or *illuc*, which are used only in the Nom. Acc. and Abl. Sing. and in the Neut. Plural *isthæc*, and *illæc*.

The syllables *te*, *ce*, *pte*, *cŕne*, are sometimes added to pronouns to increase their demonstrative force ; as, *tute*, *hujusce*, &c.

Pronouns are divided into four Classes :

1. *Demonstratives*, which point out a person or thing present : *ego*, *tu*, *sui*.
 2. *Relatives*, which refer to something going before ; *ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, *quis*, *qui*.
 3. *Possessives*, which denote possession ; *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, *vester*.
 4. *Gentiles* or *Patrials*, which signify one's country : *nostras*, *vestras*, *cujas*.
- Quis* and *cujas* are called also *Interrogatives*.

V

VERB.

A Verb is a word which expresses what is affirmed or said of things.

Verbs are declined by Voices, Moods, Tenses, Numbers, and Persons.

They have two Voices : Active ending in *o* ; and Passive ending in *or*.

They have four Moods : Indicative, Subjunctive,* Imperative, and Infinitive.

They have six Tenses : Present, Imperfect, Perfect Pluperfect, Future, and Future-Perfect.

They have two Numbers : Singular and Plural.

They have three Persons in each Number.

* The Subjunctive Mood is also called Potential or Conditional.

There are four Conjugations, or modes of varying Verbs, distinguished by the Infinitive Mood.

The First Conjugation has *ā* long before *re* of the Infinitive, as *amāre*; the Second has *ē* long, as *monēre*; the Third has *ĕ* short, as *regĕre*; the Fourth has *ī* long, as *audire*.

There are four Principal Parts of a Verb from which the other Tenses are formed: the Present ending in *o*; the Perfect in *i*; the Supine in *um*; and the Infinitive in *re*; as, Pres. *amo*; Perf. *amāvi*; Sup. *amātum*; Inf. *amāre*.

FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

From the Present Indicative are formed,

1. The Imperfect Indicative, in the First Conjugation, by the change of *o* into *ābam*; in the second, of *eo* into *ēbam*; and in the Third and Fourth, of *o* into *ĕbam*.

2. The Future Indicative, in the First Conjugation, by the change of *o* into *ābo*; in the Second, of *eo* into *ēbo*; and in the Third and Fourth, of *o* into *am*.

3. The Present Subjunctive, in the First Conjugation, by the change of *o* into *em*; and in the Second, Third, and Fourth, into *am*.

4. The Present Participle, in the First Conjugation, by the change of *o* into *ans*; in the Second, of *eo* into *ens*; and in the Third and Fourth, of *o* into *ens*.

5. The Gerund is formed from the Present Participle, by the change of *s* into *dum*.

From the Perfect Indicative are formed,

1. The Pluperfect Indicative, by the change of *i* into *eram*.

2. The Future-Perfect, by the change of *i* into *ero*.

3. The Perfect Subjunctive, by the change of *i* into *erim*.

4. The Pluperfect Subjunctive, by the change of *i* into *issem*.

5. The Perfect Infinitive, by the change of *i* into *isse*.

From the Supine are formed,

1. The Future Participle, by the change of *um* into *urus*.

2. The Future Subjunctive is made up of the Future Participle, and *sim*.

3. The Future Infinitive is made up of the Future Participle and *esse* or *fuisse*.

From the Present Infinitive are formed,

1. The Imperfect Subjunctive, by adding *m*.

2. The Present Imperative, by dropping *re*.

SUM is an irregular Verb, and is thus conjugated :

Principal Parts.

Pres. Ind.
Sum.

Perf. Ind.
fui.

Pres. Inf.
esse, to be.

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

Persons.

- Sing.* 1. *Ego* Sum, *I am.*
2. *Tu* Es, *thou art, or you are.*
3. *Ille** Est, *he is.*
Plur. 1. *Nos* Sūmus, *we are.*
2. *Vos* Estis, *ye, or you are.*
3. *Illi†* Sunt, *they are.*

Imperfect Tense.

- Sing.* 1. *Ego* Eram, *I was.*
2. *Tu* Eras, *thou wast, or you were.*
3. *Ille* Erat, *he was.*
Plur. 1. *Nos* Erāmus, *we were.*
2. *Vos* Erātis, *ye, or you were.*
3. *Illi* Erant, *they were.*

Perfect Tense.

- Sing.* 1. *Ego* Fui, *I was, or have been.*
2. *Tu* Fuisti, *thou wast, or hast been.*
3. *Ille* Fuit, *he was, or has been.*
Plur. 1. *Nos* Fuimus, *we were, or have been.*
2. *Vos* Fuistis, *ye, or you were, or have been.*
3. *Illi* Fuērunt, *or fuēre, they were, or have been.*

Pluperfect Tense.

- Sing.* 1. *Ego* Fuēram, *I had been.*
2. *Tu* Fueras, *thou hadst been.*
3. *Ille* Fuerat, *he had been.*
Plur. 1. *Nos* Fuerāmus, *we had been.*
2. *Vos* Fuerātis, *ye, or you had been.*
3. *Illi* Fuerant, *they had been.*

Future Tense.

- Sing.* 1. *Ego* Ero, *I shall, or will be.*
2. *Tu* Eris, *thou shalt, or wilt be.*
3. *Ille* Erit, *he shall, or will be.*
Plur. 1. *Nos* Erimus, *we shall, or will be.*
2. *Vos* Eritis, *ye, or you shall, or will be.*
3. *Illi* Erunt, *they shall, or will be.*

* Or any Noun in the Nom. Singular : as, *liber est*, the book is.

† Or any Noun in the Nom. Plural : as, *libri sunt*, the books are.

Future-Perfect Tense.

- Sing.* 1. *Ego Fuëro, I shall have been.*
 2. *Tu Fueris, thou shalt have been.*
 3. *Ille Fuerit, he shall have been.*
- Plur.* 1. *Nos Fuerimus,* we shall have been.*
 2. *Vos Fueritis,* ye, or you shall have been.*
 3. *Illi Fuerint, they shall have been.*

Subjunctive Mood.

Present Tense.

- Sing.* 1. *Ego Sim, I may, or can be.*
 2. *Tu Sis, thou mayest, or canst be.*
 3. *Ille Sit, he may, or can be.*
- Plur.* 1. *Nos Simus, we may, or can be.*
 2. *Vos Sitis, ye, or you may, or can be.*
 3. *Illi Sint, they may, or can be.*

Imperfect Tense.

- Sing.* 1. *Ego Essem, I might, could, would, or should be.*
 2. *Tu Esses, thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, or shouldst be.*
 3. *Ille Esset, he might, could, would, or should be.*
- Plur.* 1. *Nos Essëmus, we might, could, would, or should be.*
 2. *Vos Essëtis, ye, or you might, could, would, or should be.*
 3. *Illi Essent, they might, could, would, or should be.*

Perfect Tense.

- Sing.* 1. *Ego Fuërim, I may have been.*
 2. *Tu Fueris, thou mayest have been.*
 3. *Ille Fuerit, he may have been.*
- Plur.* 1. *Nos Fuerimus, we may have been.*
 2. *Vos Fueritis, ye, or you may have been.*
 3. *Illi Fuerint, they may have been.*

Pluperfect Tense.

- Sing.* 1. *Ego Fuissem, I might, could, would, or should have been.*
 2. *Tu Fuisses, thou mightst, couldst, &c. have been.*
 3. *Ille Fuisset, he might, could, &c. have been.*
- Plur.* 1. *Nos Fuissëmus, we might, could, &c. have been.*
 2. *Vos Fuissëtis, ye, or you might, could, &c. have been.*
 3. *Illi Fuissent, they might, could, &c. have been.*

* The quantity of the *i*, in the First and Second Persons Plural of the Future-Perfect of every Verb, is doubtful.

Future Tense.*

- Sing.* 1. *Ego* Futūr-us sim, *I may be about to be, or will be.*
 2. *Tu* Futur-us sis, *thou mayest be about to be, or will be ; &c.*

Imperative Mood.

Present Tense.

- Sing.* 2. *Tu* Es, or esto, *be thou.*
 3. *Ille* Esto, *let him be.*
Plur. 2. *Vos* Este, or estōte, *be ye, or be you.*
 3. *Illi* Suntō, *let them be.*

Infinitive Mood.

Present and Imperfect Tense.

Esse, *to be, that I am, that I was.*

Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.

Fuisse, *to have been, that I have been, that I had been.*

Future Tense.

- Futūrus, -a, -um esse, *to be about to be, that I will be, that I would be ;*
 and Futūrus, -a, -um fuisse, *to have been about to be, that I would have been.*

Participle.

Future.

Futūrus, -a, -um, *about to be.*

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Active Voice.

AMO, *I love.*

Creo, *I create.* Domo, *I tame.*

Principal Parts.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	<i>Pres. Infin.</i>
Amo,	amāvī,	amātum,	amāre, <i>to love.</i>
Creo,	creāvī,	creātum,	creāre, <i>to create.</i>
Domo,	domuī,	domitum,	domāre, <i>to tame.</i>

* There is no Simple Future Subjunctive, but, instead of it, the Future Participle is used with *sim*.

*Indicative Mood.*Presen. Tense.—(*Principal Part.*)

- Sing.* 1. Am-o, *I love, do love, or am loving.*
 2. Am-as, *thou lovest, dost love, or art loving.*
 3. Am-at, *he loves, does love, or is loving.*

- Plur.* 1. Am-āmus, *we love, do love, or are loving.*
 2. Am-ātis, *ye love, do love, or are loving.*
 3. Am-ant, *they love, do love, or are loving.*

Cre-o. Dom-o.

Imperfect Tense.—(*From the Present.*)

- Sing.* 1. Am-ābam, *I loved, did love, or was loving.*
 2. Am-abas, *thou lovedst, didst love, or wast loving.*
 3. Am-abat, *he loved, did love, or was loving.*

- Plur.* 1. Am-abāmus, *we loved, did love, or were loving.*
 2. Am-abātis, *ye loved, did love, or were loving.*
 3. Am-abant, *they loved, did love, or were loving.*

Cre-ābam. Dom-ābam.

Perfect Tense.—(*Principal Part.*)

- Sing.* 1. Amāv-i, *I loved, or have loved.*
 2. Amav-isti, *thou lovedst, or hast loved.*
 3. Amav-it, *he loved, or has loved.*

- Plur.* 1. Amav-īmus, *we loved, or have loved.*
 2. Amav-istis, *ye loved, or have loved.*
 3. Amav-ērunt, *or -ère, they loved, or have loved.*

Creāv-i. Domu-i.

Pluperfect Tense.—(*From the Perfect.*)

- Sing.* 1. Amav-ěram, *I had loved.*
 2. Amav-eras, *thou hadst loved.*
 3. Amav-erat, *he had loved.*

- Plur.* 1. Amav-erāmus, *we had loved.*
 2. Amav-erātis, *ye had loved.*
 3. Amav-erant, *they had loved.*

Creav-ěram. Domu-ěram.

Future Tense.—(*From the Present.*)

- Sing.* 1. Am-ābo, *I shall, or will love.*
 2. Am-abis, *thou shalt, or wilt love.*
 3. Am-abit, *he shall, or will love.*

- Plur.* 1. Am-abīmus, *we shall, or will love.*
 2. Am-abītis, *ye shall, or will love.*
 3. Am-abunt, *they shall, or will love.*

Cre-ābo. Dom-ābo.

Future-Perfect Tense.—(*From the Perfect.*)

- Sing.* 1. Amav-ěro, *I shall have loved.*
 2. Amav-eris, *thou shalt have loved.*
 3. Amav-erit, *he shall have loved.*
- Plur.* 1. Amav-erimus, *we shall have loved.*
 2. Amav-eritis, *ye shall have loved.*
 3. Amav-erint, *they shall have loved.*
- Creav-ěro. Domu-ěro. ↙

Subjunctive Mood.*

Present Tense.—(*From the Present.*)

- Sing.* 1. Am-em, *I may, or can love.*
 2. Am-es, *thou mayest, or canst love.*
 3. Am-et, *he may, or can love.*
- Plur.* 1. Am-ěmus, *we may, or can love.*
 2. Am-ětis, *ye may, or can love.*
 3. Am-ent, *they may, or can love.*
- Cre-em. Dom-em.

Imperfect Tense.—(*From the Present Infinitive.*)

- Sing.* 1. Am-ārem, *I might, could, would, or should love.*
 2. Am-ares, *thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, &c. love.*
 3. Am-aret, *he might, could, would, or should love.*
- Plur.* 1. Am-arěmus, *we might, could, &c. love.*
 2. Am-arětis, *ye might, could, would, or should love.*
 3. Am-arent, *they might, could, would, or should love.*
- Cre-ārem. Dom-ārem.

Perfect Tense.—(*From the Perfect.*)

- Sing.* 1. Amav-ěrim, *I may have loved.*
 2. Amav-eris, *thou mayest have loved.*
 3. Amav-erit, *he may have loved.*
- Plur.* 1. Amav-erimus, *we may have loved.*
 2. Amav-eritis, *ye may have loved.*
 3. Amav-erint, *they may have loved.*
- Creav-ěrim. Domu-ěrim.

Pluperfect Tense.—(*From the Perfect.*)

- Sing.* 1. Amav-isse[m], *I might, could, would, &c. have loved.*
 2. Amav-isses, *thou mightst, couldst, &c. have loved.*
 3. Amav-isset, *he might, could, &c. have loved.*

* The Subjunctive Tenses, when preceded by Conjunctions, or Indefinites, are often translated like the corresponding Tenses of the Indicative: as, *si amem*, if I love; *nescio quis amet*, I know not who loves.

The Third Person Singular, and the First and Third Persons Plural of the Present, are often translated by *let*: as, *amet*, let him love.

- Plur.* 1. Amav-issēmus, *we might, could, &c. have loved.*
 2. Amav-issētis, *ye might, could, &c. have loved.*
 3. Amav-issent, *they might, could, &c. have loved.*

Creav-issem, Domu-issem.

Future Tense.—(*Fut. Participle and sim.*)

- Sing.* 1. Amat-ūrus sim, *I may be about to love, or will love.*
 2. Amat-urus sis, *thou mayest be about to love, or wilt love; &c.*

Creat-ūrus sim. Domit-ūrus sim.

Imperative Mood.

Present Tense.—(*From the Pres. Inf.*)

- Sing.* 2. Am-a, or -āto, *love thou, or do thou love.*
 3. Am-āto, *let him love.*

- Plur.* 2. Am-āte, or -atōte, *love ye, or do ye love.*
 3. Am-anto, *let them love.*

Cre-a, or -āto. Dom-a, or -āto.

Infinitive Mood.*

Present and Imperfect Tense.—(*Principal Part.*)

Am-āre, *to love, that I love, that I was loving.*

Cre-āre. Dom-āre.

Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.—(*From the Perfect.*)

Amav-isse, *to have loved, that I have loved, that I had loved.*

Creav-isse. Domu-isse.

Future Tense.—(*Fut. Participle and esse, or fuisse.*)

Amat-ūrus, -a, -um esse, *to be about to love, that I will love, that I would love;*

and Amat-ūrus, -a, -um fuisse, *to have been about to love, that I would have loved.*

Creat-ūrus esse, or fuisse. Domit-ūrus esse, or fuisse.

Participles.

Present and Imperfect.—(*From the Present.*)

Am-ans, *loving; Gen. am-antis.*

Cre-ans. Dom-ans.

Future.—(*From the Supine.*)

Amat-ūrus, -a, -um, *about to love.*

Creat-ūrus. Domit-ūrus.

* The Infinitive Tenses, when preceded by an Accusative, are commonly translated like the corresponding Tenses of the Indicative, the Particle *that* being sometimes expressed, but often understood.

Gerunds.—(From the Pres. Participle.)

Nom. Aman-dum, loving.

Gen. Aman-di, of loving.

Dat. Aman-do, to loving.

Acc. Aman-dum, loving.

Abl. Aman-do, with loving.

Crean-dum. Doman-dum.

Supines.—(Principal Part.)

Amāt-um, to love.

Amāt-u, to love, or to be loved.

Creāt-um. Domīt-um. ↙

Pres. Ind.

Muto,

Seco,

Voco,

Mico,

Perfect.

mutāvi,

secuī,

vocāvi,

micui,

Supine.

mutātum,

sectum,

vocātum,

—

Pres. Inf.

mutāre, to change.

secāre, to cut.

vocāre, to call.

micāre, to glitter.

PASSIVE VOICE.

FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

1. The Present Indicative Passive is formed from the Present Indicative Active by adding *r*.

2. The Imperfect Indicative Passive is formed from the Imperfect Indicative Active, by the change of *m* into *r*.

3. The Perfect Indicative Passive is made up of the Perfect Participle and *sum*, or *fui*.

4. The Pluperfect Indicative Passive is made up of the Perfect Participle and *eram*, or *fuëram*.

5. The Future Indicative Passive is formed from the Future Indicative Active, in the First and Second Conjugations, by adding *r*, and in the Third and Fourth, by the change of *m* into *r*.

6. The Future-Perfect Passive is made up of the Perfect Participle and *ero*, or *fuëro*.

7. The Present Subjunctive Passive is formed from the Present Subjunctive Active, by the change of *m* into *r*.

8. The Imperfect Subjunctive Passive is formed from the Imperfect Subjunctive Active, by the change of *m* into *r*.

9. The Perfect Subjunctive Passive is made up of the Perfect Participle and *sim*, or *fuërim*.

10. The Pluperfect Subjunctive Passive is made up of the Perfect Participle and *essem*, or *fuissem*.

11. The Present Imperative Passive is formed from the Present Imperative Active by adding *re*.

12. The Present Infinitive Passive is formed from the Present Infinitive Active, in the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations, by the change of *e* into *i*, and in the Third, by the change of *ere* into *i*.

13. The Perfect Infinitive Passive is made up of the Perfect Participle and *esse*, or *fuisse*.

14. The Future Infinitive Passive is made up of the First Supine and *iri*.

15. The Perfect Participle is formed from the First Supine, by the change of *um* into *us*.

16. The Future Participle Passive is formed from the Gerund by the change of *dum* into *dus*.

<i>Pres. Indicative.</i>	<i>Perf. Participle.</i>	<i>Pres. Infinitive.</i>
Amor,	amātus,	amāri, <i>to be loved.</i>
Creor,	creātus,	creāri, <i>to be created.</i>
Domor,	domītus,	domāri, <i>to be tamed.</i>

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.—(From the *Pres. Ind. Active.*)

- Sing.* 1. Am-or, *I am loved.**
 2. Am-āris, or -āre, *thou art loved.*
 3. Am-ātur, *he is loved.*

- Plur.* 1. Am-āmur, *we are loved.*
 2. Am-amīni, *ye are loved.*
 3. Am-antur, *they are loved.*

Cre-or. Dom-or.

Imperfect Tense.—(From the *Imp. Ind. Active.*)

- Sing.* 1. Am-ābar, *I was loved.*†
 2. Am-abāris, or -abāre, *thou wast loved.*
 3. Am-abātur, *he was loved.*

- Plur.* 1. Am-abāmur, *we were loved.*
 2. Am-abamīni, *ye were loved.*
 3. Am-abantur, *they were loved.*

Cre-ābar. Dom-ābar.

* The true meaning of *amor* is, I am in the state of being loved, or I am being loved; as, *domus ædificatur*, the house is building, is being built; not the house is built.

† *Amabar* properly signifies, I was being loved, I was in the state of being loved: as, *domus ædificabatur*, the house was building, was being built; not the house was built.

Perfect Tense.—(*Perfect Part.* and *sum*, or *fui*.)

- Sing.* 1. *Amāt-us sum, or fui, *I was*, or *have been loved*.
 2. Amat-us es, or fuisti, *thou wast*, or *hast been loved*.
 3. Amat-us est, or fuit, *he was*, or *has been loved*.

- Plur.* 1. Amat-i sumus, or fuimus, *we were*, or *have been loved*.
 2. Amat-i estis, or fuistis, *ye were*, or *have been loved*.
 3. Amat-i sunt, fuērunt, or fuēre, *they were*, or *have been loved*.

Creāt-us sum, or fui. Domīt-us sum, or fui.

Pluperfect Tense.—(*Perf. Part.* and *eram*, or *fuëram*.)

- Sing.* 1. Amāt-us eram, or fuëram, *I had been loved*.
 2. Amat-us eras, or fueras, *thou hadst been loved*.
 3. Amat-us erat, or fuerat, *he had been loved*.

- Plur.* 1. Amat-i erāmus, or fuerāmus, *we had been loved*.
 2. Amat-i erātis, or fuerātis, *ye had been loved*.
 3. Amat-i erant, or fuerant, *they had been loved*.

Creāt-us eram, or fuëram. Domīt-us eram, or fuëram.

Future Tense.—(*From the Fut. Ind. Active*.)

- Sing.* 1. Am-ābor, *I shall*, or *will be loved*.
 2. Am-abēris, or -abēre, *thou shalt*, or *wilt be loved*.
 3. Am-abitur, *he shall*, or *will be loved*.

- Plur.* 1. Am-abimur, *we shall*, or *will be loved*.
 2. Am-abimīni, *ye shall*, or *will be loved*.
 3. Am-abuntur, *they shall*, or *will be loved*.

Cre-ābor. Dom-ābor.

Future-Perfect Tense.—(*Perf. Part.* and *ero*, or *fuëro*.)

- Sing.* 1. Amāt-us ero, or fuëro, *I shall have been loved*.
 2. Amat-us eris, or fueris, *thou shalt have been loved*.
 3. Amat-us erit, or fuerit, *he shall have been loved*.

- Plur.* 1. Amat-i erimus, or fuerimus, *we shall have been loved*.
 2. Amat-i eritīs, or fueritis, *ye shall have been loved*.
 3. Amat-i erunt, or fuerint, *they shall have been loved*.

Creāt-us ero, or fuëro. Domīt-us ero, or fuëro.

* Properly *amatus*, -a, -um *sum*, or *fui*, I have been loved. The Perfect Participle, in all the Tenses of which it forms a part, must agree in Gender and Number with the Nominative of the Verb: as, *vir amatus est*, the man is loved; *fœmina amata est*, the woman is loved; *animal amatum est*, the animal is loved. *Fui*, *fuisti*, &c. are very seldom found with the Perfect Participle.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present Tense.—(From the Pres. Sub. Active.)

- Sing.* 1. Am-er, *I may, or can be loved.*
 2. Am-ēris, or -ēre, *thou mayest, or canst be loved.*
 3. Am-ētur, *he may, or can be loved.*

- Plur.* 1. Am-ēmur, *we may, or can be loved.*
 2. Am-emīni, *ye may, or can be loved.*
 3. Am-entur, *they may, or can be loved.*

Cre-er. Dom-er.

Imperfect Tense.—(From the Imp. Sub. Active.)

- Sing.* 1. Am-ārer, *I might, could, &c. be loved.*
 2. Am-arēris, or -arēre, *thou mightst, &c. be loved.*
 3. Am-arētur, *he might, &c. be loved.*

- Plur.* 1. Am-arēmur, *we might, &c. be loved.*
 2. Am-aremīni, *ye might, &c. be loved.*
 3. Am-arentur, *they might, &c. be loved.*

Cre-ārer. Dom-ārer.

Perfect Tense.—(Perf. Part. and sim, or fuërim.)

- Sing.* 1. Amāt-us sim, or fuërim, *I may have been loved.*
 2. Amat-us sis, or fueris, *thou mayest have been loved.*
 3. Amat-us sit, or fuerit, *he may have been loved.*

- Plur.* 1. Amat-i simus, or fuerimus, *we may have been loved.*
 2. Amat-i sitis, or fueritis, *ye may have been loved.*
 3. Amat-i sint, or fuerint, *they may have been loved.*

Creat-us sim, or fuërim. Domit-us sim, or fuërim.

Pluperfect Tense.—(Perf. Part. and essem, or fuissēm.)

- Sing.* 1. Amāt-us essem, or fuissēm, *I might, &c. have been loved.*
 2. Amat-us esses, or fuisses, *thou mightst, &c. have been loved.*
 3. Amat-us esset, or fuisset, *he might, &c. have been loved.*

- Plur.* 1. Amat-i essēmus, or fuissēmus, *we might, &c. have been loved.*
 2. Amat-i essētis, or fuissētis, *ye might, &c. have been loved.*
 3. Amat-i essent, or fuissent, *they might, &c. have been loved.*

Creat-us essem, or fuissēm. Domit-us essem, or fuissēm.

Imperative Mood.

✓

Present Tense.—(From the Pres. Imper. Active.)

- Sing.* 2. Am-āre, or -ātor, *be thou loved.*
 3. Am-ātor, *let him be loved.*

- Plur.* 2. Am-amīni, *be ye loved.*
 3. Am-antor, *let them be loved.*

Cre-āre, or -ātor. Dom-āre, or -ātor.

Infinitive Mood.

Present and Imperfect Tense.—(From the Pres. Inf. Active.)

Am-āri, to be loved, that I am loved, that I was loved.

Cre-āri. Dom-āri.

Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.—(Perf. Part. and esse, or fuisse.)

Amāt-us, -a, -um esse, or fuisse, to have been loved, that I have been loved, that I had been loved.

Creāt-us esse, or fuisse. Domīt-us esse, or fuisse.

Future Tense.—(Supine and iri.)

Amāt-um iri, to be about to be loved, that I will be loved, that I would be loved.

Creāt-um iri. Domīt-um iri.

Participles.

Perfect.—(From the Supine.)

Amāt-us, -a, -um, loved, or being loved.

Creāt-us, -a, -um. Domīt-us, -a, -um.

Future.—(From the Gerund.)

Aman-dus, -da, -dum, to be loved, deserving, or requiring to be loved. ✓

Crean-dus. Doman-dus.

Pres. Ind.

Mutor,

Secor,

Vocor,

Perf. Part.

mutātus,

sectus,

vocātus,

Pres. Inf.

mutāri, to be changed.

secāri, to be cut.

vocāri, to be called.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Active Voice.

MONEO, I advise.

Doceo, I teach.

Jubeo, I order.

Principal Parts.

Pres. Ind.

Moneo,

Doceo,

Jubeo,

Perfect.

Monui,

docui,

jussi,

Supine.

monitum,

doctum,

jussum,

Pres. Inf.

monēre, to advise.

docēre, to teach.

jubēre, to order.

Indicative Mood.

✓ Present Tense.—(Principal Part.)

Sing. 1. Mon-eo, I advise, do advise, or am advising.

2. Mon-es, thou advisest, dost advise, or art advising

3. Mon-et, he advises, does advise, or is advising.

- Plur.* 1. Mon-émus, *we advise, do advise, or are advising.*
 2. Mon-ētis, *ye advise, do advise, or are advising.*
 3. Mon-ent, *they advise, do advise, or are advising.*

Doc-eo. Jub-eo.

Imperfect Tense.—(*From the Present.*)

- Sing.* 1. Mon-ēbam, *I advised, did advise, or was advising.*
 2. Mon-ebas, *thou advisedst, didst advise, or wast advising.*
 3. Mon-ebat, *he advised, did advise, or was advising.*

- Plur.* 1. Mon-ebāmus, *we advised, did advise, or were advising.*
 2. Mon-ebātis, *ye advised, did advise, or were advising.*
 3. Mon-ebant, *they advised, did advise, or were advising.*

Doc-ēbam. Jub-ēbam.

Perfect Tense.—(*Principal Part.*)

- Sing.* 1. Monu-i, *I advised, or have advised.*
 2. Monu-isti, *thou advisedst, or hast advised.*
 3. Monu-it, *he advised, or has advised.*

- Plur.* 1. Monu-īmus, *we advised, or have advised.*
 2. Monu-istis, *ye advised, or have advised.*
 3. Monu-ērunt, *or -ēre, they advised, or have advised.*

Docu-i. Juss-i.

Pluperfect Tense.—(*From the Perfect.*)

- Sing.* 1. Monu-eram, *I had advised.*
 2. Monu-eras, *thou hadst advised.*
 3. Monu-erat, *he had advised.*

- Plur.* 1. Monu-erāmus, *we had advised.*
 2. Monu-erātis, *ye had advised.*
 3. Monu-erant, *they had advised.*

Docu-eram. Juss-eram.

Future Tense.—(*From the Present.*)

- Sing.* 1. Mon-ēbo, *I shall, or will advise.*
 2. Mon-ebis, *thou shalt, or wilt advise.*
 3. Mon-ebit, *he shall, or will advise.*

- Plur.* 1. Mon-ebīmus, *we shall, or will advise.*
 2. Mon-ebītis, *ye shall, or will advise.*
 3. Mon-ebunt, *they shall, or will advise.*

Doc-ēbo. Jub-ēbo.

Future-Perfect Tense.—(*From the Perfect.*)

- Sing.* 1. Monu-ēro, *I shall have advised.*
 2. Monu-eris, *thou shalt have advised.*
 3. Monu-erit, *he shall have advised.*

- Plur.* 1. Monu-erimus, *we shall have advised.*
 2. Monu-eritis, *ye shall have advised.*
 3. Monu-erint, *they shall have advised.*

Docu-ēro. Juss-ēro.

Subjunctive Mood.

✓ Present Tense.—(From the Present.)

- Sing.* 1. Mone-am, *I may, or can advise.*
 2. Mone-as, *thou mayest, or canst advise.*
 3. Mone-at, *he may, or can advise.*

- Plur.* 1. Mone-āmus, *we may, or can advise.*
 2. Mone-ātis, *ye may, or can advise.*
 3. Mone-ant, *they may, or can advise.*

Doce-am. Jube-am.

Imperfect Tense.—(From the Present Infinitive.)

- Sing.* 1. Mon-ērem, *I might, could, would, or should advise.*
 2. Mon-eres, *thou mightst, couldst, &c. advise.*
 3. Mon-eret, *he might, could, would, &c. advise.*

- Plur.* 1. Mon-erēmus, *we might, could, would, &c. advise.*
 2. Mon-erētis, *ye might, could, would, &c. advise.*
 3. Mon-erent, *they might, could, would, &c. advise.*

Doc-ērem. Jub-ērem.

Perfect Tense.—(From the Perfect.)

- Sing.* 1. Monu-ērim, *I may have advised.*
 2. Monu-eris, *thou mayest have advised.*
 3. Monu-erit, *he may have advised.*

- Plur.* 1. Monu-erīmus, *we may have advised.*
 2. Monu-erītis, *ye may have advised.*
 3. Monu-erint, *they may have advised.*

Docu-ērim. Juss-ērim.

Pluperfect Tense.—(From the Perfect.)

- Sing.* 1. Monu-isse[m], *I might, could, &c. have advised.*
 2. Monu-isses, *thou mightst, couldst, &c. have advised.*
 3. Monu-isset, *he might, could, &c. have advised.*

- Plur.* 1. Monu-issēmus, *we might, could, &c. have advised.*
 2. Monu-issētis, *ye might, could, &c. have advised.*
 3. Monu-issent, *they might, could, &c. have advised.*

Docu-isse[m]. Juss-isse[m].

Future Tense.—(Fut. Participle and sim.)

- Sing.* 1. Monit-ūrus sim, *I may be about to advise, or will advise.*
 2. Monit-urus sis, *thou mayest be about to advise, or will advise; &c.*

Doct-ūrus sim. Juss-ūrus sim.

Imperative Mood.

Present Tense.—(From the Pres. Inf.)

- Sing.* 2. Mon-e, *or -ēto, advise thou, or do thou advise.*
 3. Mon-ēto, *let him advise.*

- Plur.* 2. Mon-ête, or -etôte, *advise ye, or do ye advise.*
 3. Mon-ento, *let them advise.*
 Doc-e, or -êto. Jub-e, or -êto.

Infinitive Mood.

Present and Imperfect Tense.—(*Principal Part.*)
 Mon-êre, *to advise, that I advise, that I was advising.*
 Doc-êre. Jub-êre.

Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.—(*From the Perfect.*)
 Monu-isse, *to have advised, that I have advised, that I had advised.*
 Docu-isse. Juss-isse.

Future Tense.—(*Fut. Participle and esse, or fuisse.*)
 Monit-ûrus, -a, -um *esse, to be about to advise, that I will advise, that I would advise ;*
and Monit-ûrus, -a, -um fuisse, to have been about to advise, that I would have advised.
 Doct-ûrus *esse, or fuisse.* Juss-ûrus *esse, or fuisse.*

Participles.

Present and Imperfect.—(*From the Present.*)
 Mon-ens, *advising.*
 Doc-ens. Jub-ens.

Future.—(*From the Supine.*)
 Monit-ûrus, -a, -um, *about to advise.*
 Doct-ûrus. Juss-ûrus.

Gerunds.—(From the Pres. Participle.)
Nom. Monen-dum, *advising.*
Gen. Monen-di, *of advising.*
Dat. Monen-do, *to advising.*
Acc. Monen-dum, *advising.*
Abl. Monen-do, *with advising.*
 Docen-dum. Juben-dum.

Supines.—(Principal Part.)
 Monit-um, *to advise.*
 Monit-u, *to advise, or to be advised.*
 Doct-um. Juss-um. ▢

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>
— Præbeo,	præbui,	præbitum,	præbère, <i>to afford.</i>
— Torqueo,	torsi,	tortum,	torquère, <i>to twist.</i>
— Video,	vidi,	visum,	vidère, <i>to see.</i>
— Lugeo,	luxi.	—	lugère, <i>to mourn.</i>

PASSIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Perf. Participle.</i>	<i>Pres. Infinitive.</i>
Moneor,	monitus,	monēri, <i>to be advised.</i>
Doceor,	doctus,	docēri, <i>to be taught.</i>
Jubeor,	jussus,	jubēri, <i>to be ordered.</i>

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.—(*From the Pres. Ind. Active.*)

- Sing.* 1. Mon-eor, *I am advised.*
 2. Mon-ēris, or -ēre, *thou art advised.*
 3. Mon-ētur, *he is advised.*

- Plur.* 1. Mon-ēmur, *we are advised.*
 2. Mon-emīni, *ye are advised.*
 3. Mon-entur, *they are advised.*

Doc-eor. Jub-eor.

Imperfect Tense.—(*From the Imp. Ind. Active.*)

- Sing.* 1. Mon-ēbar, *I was advised.*
 2. Mon-ebāris, or -ebāre, *thou wast advised.*
 3. Mon-ebātur, *he was advised.*

- Plur.* 1. Mon-ebāmur, *we were advised.*
 2. Mon-ebamīni, *ye were advised.*
 3. Mon-ebantur, *they were advised.*

Doc-ēbar. Jub-ēbar.

Perfect Tense.—(*Perf. Part. and sum, or fui.*)

- Sing.* 1. Monit-us sum, or fui, *I was, or have been advised.*
 2. Monit-us es, or fuisti, *thou wast, or hast been advised.*
 3. Monit-us est, or fuit, *he was, or has been advised.*

- Plur.* 1. Monit-i sumus, or fuimus, *we were, or have been advised.*
 2. Monit-i estis, or fuistis, *ye were, or have been advised.*
 3. Monit-i sunt, fuērunt, or fuēre, *they were, or have been advised.*

Doct-us sum, or fui. Juss-us sum, or fui.

Pluperfect Tense.—(*Perf. Part. and eram, or fueram.*)

- Sing.* 1. Monit-us eram, or fueram, *I had been advised.*
 2. Monit-us eras, or fueras, *thou hadst been advised.*
 3. Monit-us erat, or fuerat, *he had been advised.*

- Plur.* 1. Monit-i erāmus, or fuerāmus, *we had been advised.*
 2. Monit-i erātis, or fuerātis, *ye had been advised.*
 3. Monit-i erant, or fuerant, *they had been advised.*

Doct-us eram, or fueram. Juss-us eram, or fueram.

Future Tense.—(*From the Fut. Ind. Active.*)

- Sing.* 1. Mon-ēbor, *I shall, or will be advised.*
 2. Mon-ebēris, or -ebēre, *thou shalt, or wilt be advised.*
 3. Mon-ebitur, *he shall, or will be advised.*
- Plur.* 1. Mon-ebimur, *we shall, or will be advised.*
 2. Mon-ebimīni, *ye shall, or will be advised.*
 3. Mon-ebuntur, *they shall, or will be advised.*
- Doc-ēbor. Jub-ēbor.

Future-Perfect Tense.—(*Perf. Part. and ero, or fuēro.*)

- Sing.* 1. Monit-us ero, or fuēro, *I shall have been advised.*
 2. Monit-us eris, or fueris, *thou shalt have been advised.*
 3. Monit-us erit, or fuerit, *he shall have been advised.*
- Plur.* 1. Monit-i erimus, or fuerimus, *we shall have been advised.*
 2. Monit-i eritis, or fueritis, *ye shall have been advised.*
 3. Monit-i erunt, or fuerint, *they shall have been advised.*
- Doct-us ero, or fuēro. Juss-us ero, or fuēro.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present Tense.—(*From the Pres. Sub. Active.*)

- Sing.* 1. Mon-ear, *I may, or can be advised.*
 2. Mon-eāris, or -eāre, *thou mayest, or canst be advised.*
 3. Mon-eātur, *he may, or can be advised.*
- Plur.* 1. Mon-eāmur, *we may, or can be advised.*
 2. Mon-eamīni, *ye may, or can be advised.*
 3. Mon-eantur, *they may, or can be advised.*
- Doc-ear. Jub-ear.

Imperfect Tense.—(*From the Imp. Sub. Active.*)

- Sing.* 1. Mon-ērer, *I might, could, would, &c. be advised.*
 2. Mon-erēris, or -erēre, *thou mightst, &c. be advised.*
 3. Mon-erētur, *he might, &c. be advised.*
- Plur.* 1. Mon-erēmur, *we might, &c. be advised.*
 2. Mon-eremīni, *ye might, &c. be advised.*
 3. Mon-erentur, *they might, &c. be advised.*
- Doc-ērer. Jub-ērer.

Perfect Tense.—(*Perf. Part. and sim, or fuērim.*)

- Sing.* 1. Monit-us sim, or fuērim, *I may have been advised.*
 2. Monit-us sis, or fueris, *thou mayest have been advised.*
 3. Monit-us sit, or fuerit, *he may have been advised.*
- Plur.* 1. Monit-i simus, or fuerimus, *we may have been advised.*
 2. Monit-i sitis, or fueritis, *ye may have been advised.*
 3. Monit-i sint, or fuerint, *they may have been advised.*
- Doct-us sim, or fuērim. Juss-us sim, or fuērim.

Pluperfect Tense.—(*Perf. Part. and essem, or fuisset.*)

- Sing.* 1. Monit-us essem, or fuisset, *I might, &c. have been advised.*
 2. Monit-us esses, or fuisset, *thou mightst, &c. have been advised.*
 3. Monit-us esset, or fuisset, *he might, &c. have been advised.*
Plur. 1. Monit-i essēmus, or fuissēmus, *we might, &c. have been advised.*
 2. Monit-i essētis, or fuissētis, *ye might, &c. have been advised.*
 3. Monit-i essent, or fuissent, *they might, &c. have been advised.*

Doct-us essem, or fuisset.

Juss-us essem, or fuisset.

Imperative Mood.

✓ Present Tense.—(*From the Pres. Imper. Active.*)

Sing. 2. Mon-ēre, or -ētor, *be thou advised.*

3. Mon-ētor, *let him be advised.*

Plur. 2. Mon-emīni, *be ye advised.*

3. Mon-entor, *let them be advised.*

Doc-ēre, or -ētor.

Jub-ēre, or -ētor.

Infinitive Mood.

Present and Imperfect Tense.—(*From the Pres. Inf. Active.*)

Mon-ēri, *to be advised, that I am advised, that I was advised.*

Doc-ēri.

Jub-ēri.

Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.—(*Perf. Part. and esse, or fuisse.*)

Monit-us, -a, -um esse, or fuisse, *to have been advised, that I have been advised, that I had been advised.*

Doct-us esse, or fuisse.

Juss-us esse, or fuisse.

Future Tense.—(*Supine and iri.*)

Monit-um iri, *to be about to be advised, that I will be advised, that I would be advised.*

Doct-um iri.

Juss-um iri.

Participles.

Perfect.—(*From the Supine.*)

Monit-us, -a, -um, *advised, or being advised.*

Doct-us, -a, -um. Juss-us, -a, -um.

Future.—(*From the Gerund.*)

Monen-dus, -da, -dum, *to be advised, deserving, or requiring to be advised.*

Docen-dus.

Juben-dus.

Pres. Ind.

Perf. Part.

Pres. Inf.

Præbeor,
Torqueor,
Videor,

præbitus,
tortus,
visus.

præbēri, *to be afforded.*
torquēri, *to be twisted.*
vidēri, *to be seen.*

THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Active Voice.*REGO, *I rule.*Lego, *I read.* Capiro, *I take.*

Principal Parts.

<i>Pres Ind.</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>
Rego,	rexi,	rectum,	regere, <i>to rule</i>
Lego,	legi,	lectum,	legere, <i>to read.</i>
Capiro,	cepi,	captum,	capere, <i>to take.</i>

*Indicative Mood.*Present Tense.—(*Prin. Part.*)Reg-o, *I rule, do rule, or am ruling.**Singular.**Plural.*

1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Reg-o.	-is.	-it.	-imus.	-itis.	-unt.
		Leg-o.	Cap-io.		

Imperfect Tense.—(*Present.*)Reg-ebam, *I ruled, did rule, or was ruling.*

Reg-ebam	-ebas.	-ebat.	-ebāmus.	-ebātis.	-ebant.
		Leg-ebam.	Capi-ebam.		

Perfect Tense.—(*Prin. Part.*)Rexi, *I ruled, or have ruled.*

Rex-i.	i-sti.	-it.	-imus.	-istis.	-erunt, or -ere.
		Leg-i.	Cep-i.		

Pluperfect Tense.—(*Perfect.*)Rex-eram, *I had ruled.*

Rex-eram.	-eras.	-erat.	-erāmus.	-erātis.	-erant.
		Leg-eram.	Cep-eram.		

Future Tense.—(*Present.*)Reg-am, *I shall, or will rule.*

Reg-am.	-es.	-et.	-ēmus.	-ētis.	-ent
		Leg-am.	Capi-am.		

Future-Perfect Tense.—(*Perfect.*)Rex-ero, *I shall have ruled.*

Rex-ero.	-eris.	-erit.	-erimus.	-eritis.	-erint.
		Leg-ero.	Cep-ero.		

*Subjunctive Mood.*Present Tense.—(*Present.*)

Reg-am.	-as.	-at.	-āmus.	-ātis.	-ant.
		Leg-am.	Cap-am.		

Imperfect Tense.—(*Pres. Inf.*)

Reg-ĕrem.	-eres.	-eret.	-erĕmus.	-erĕtis.	-erent.
		Leg-ĕrem.	Cap-ĕrem.		

Perfect Tense.—(*Perfect.*)

Rex-ĕrim.	-eris.	-erit.	-erĭmus.	-erĭtis.	-erint.
		Leg-ĕrim.	Cep-ĕrim.		

Pluperfect Tense.—(*Perfect.*)

Rex-issem.	-isses.	-isset.	-issĕmus.	-issĕtis.	-issent.
		Leg-issem.	Cep-issem.		

Future Tense.—(*Fut. Part. and sim.*)

Rect-ŭrus sim.	sis.	sit.	-ŭri simus.	sĭtis.	sint.
		Lect-ŭrus sim.	Capt-ŭrus sim.		

*Imperative Mood.*Present Tense.—(*Pres. Inf.*)

— Reg-e, or -ĭto.	-ĭto.	— -ĭte, or -itōte.	-unto.
	Leg-e, or -ĭto.	Cap-e, or -ĭto.	

*Infinitive Mood.*Present and Imperfect Tense.—(*Prin. Part.*)

Reg-ĕre, to rule, that I rule, that I was ruling.
Leg-ĕre. Cap-ĕre.

Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.—(*Perfect.*)

Rex-isse, to have ruled, that I have ruled, that I had ruled.
Leg-isse. Cap-isse.

Future Tense.—(*Fut. Part.* and *esse*, or *fuisse*.)

Rect-ūrus, -a, -um esse, to be about to rule, that I will rule,
that I would rule ;

and Rect-ūrus, -a, -um fuisse, to have been about to rule, that
I would have ruled.

Lect-ūrus esse, or fuisse. Capt-ūrus esse, or fuisse.

Participles.

Present and Imperfect.—(*Present.*)

Reg-ens, ruling.

Leg-ens. Capi-ens.

Future.—(*Supine.*)

Rect-ūrus, -a, -um, about to rule.

Lect-ūrus. Capt-ūrus.

Gerunds.—(*Pres. Participle.*)

Regon-dum, ruling, &c.

Legen-dum. Capien-dum.

Supines.—(*Prin. Part.*)

Rect-um, to rule. Rect-u, to rule, or to be ruled.

Lect-um. Capt-um.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>
Jacio,	jeci,	jactum,	jacere, to throw
Mitto,	misi,	missum,	mittere, to send.
Tango,	tetigi,	tactum,	tangere, to touch.
Viso,	visi,	_____	visere, to visit.

PASSIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>
Regor,	rectus,	regi, to be ruled.
Legor,	lectus,	legi, to be read.
Capior,	captus,	capi, to be taken.

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.—(*Pres. Ind. Active.*)

Regor, I am ruled.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>	
1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Reg-or.	-eris, or -ere.	-itur.	-imur.	-imini.	-untur.
		Leg-or.	Capi-or.		

Imperfect Tense.—(*Imp. Ind. Active.*)

Reg-ēbar, *I was ruled.*

Reg-ēbar. { -ebāris, -ebātur. -ebāmur. -ebamīni. -ebantui.
or -ebāre.

Leg-ēbar. Capi-ēbar.

Perfect Tense.—(*Perf. Part. and sum, or fui.*)

Rect-us sum, or fui, *I was, or have been ruled.*

Rect-us sum, or fui, &c. -i sumus, or fuimus, &c.

Lect-us sum, or fui. Capt-us sum, or fui.

Pluperfect Tense.—(*Perf. Part. and eram, or fuēram.*)

Rect-us eram, or fuēram, *I had been ruled.*

Rect-us eram, or fuēram, &c. -i erāmus, or fuerāmus, &c.

Lect-us eram, or fuēram. Capt-us eram, or fuēram.

Future Tense.—(*Fut. Ind. Active.*)

Reg-ar, *I shall, or will be ruled.*

Reg-ar. -ēris, or -ēre. -ētur. -ēmur. -emīni. -entur.

Leg-ar. Capi-ar.

Future-Perfect Tense.—(*Perf. Part. and ero, or fuēro.*)

Rect-us ero, or fuēro, *I shall have been ruled.*

Rect-us ero, or fuēro, &c. -i erimus, or fuerimus, &c.

Lect-us ero, or fuēro. Capt-us ero, or fuēro.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present Tense.—(*Pres. Sub. Active.*)

Reg-ar, *I may, or can be ruled.*

Reg-ar. -āris, or -āre. -ātur. -āmur. -amīni. -antur

Leg-ar. Capi-ar.

Imperfect Tense.—(*Imp. Sub. Active.*)

Reg-ērer, *I might, could, &c. be ruled.*

Reg-ērer, { -erēris, -erētur. -erēmur. -eremīni. -erentur
or -erēre.

Leg-ērer. Cap-ērer.

Perfect Tense.—(*Perf. Part. and sim, or fuērim.*)

Rect-us sim, or fuērim, *I may have been ruled.*

Rect-us sim, or fuērim, &c. -i simus, or fuerimus, &c.

Lect-us sim, or fuērim. Capt-us sim, or fuērim.

Pluperfect Tense.—(*Perf. Part. and essem, or fuissem.*)

Rect-us essem, or fuissem, *I might, &c. have been ruled.*

Rect-us essem, or fuissem, &c. -i essēmus, or fuissēmus, &c.

Lect-us essem, or fuissem. Capt-us essem, or fuissem.

Imperative Mood.

Present Tense.—(*Pres. Imper. Active.*)

Reg-ēre, or -ītor, *be thou ruled.*

— Reg-ēre, or -ītor. -ītor. — -imīni. -untor.

Leg-ēre, or -ītor. Cap-ēre, or -ītor.

Infinitive Mood.

Present and Imperfect Tense.—(*Pres. Inf. Active.*)

Reg-i, *to be ruled, that I am ruled, that I was ruled.*

Leg-i. Cap-i.

Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.—(*Perf. Part. and esse, or fuisse.*)

Rect-us, -a, -um esse, or fuisse, *to have been ruled, that I have been ruled, that I had been ruled.*

Lect-us esse, or fuisse. Capt-us esse, or fuisse.

Future Tense.—(*Supine and iri.*)

Rect-um iri, *to be about to be ruled, that I will be ruled, that I would be ruled.*

Lect-um iri. Capt-um iri.

Participles.

Perfect.—(*Supine.*)

Rect-us, -a, -um, *ruled, or being ruled.*

Lect-us. Capt-us.

Future.—(*Gerund.*)

Regen-dus, -da, -dum, *to be ruled, deserving, or requiring to be ruled.*

Legen-dus. Capien-dus.

Pres. Ind.

Jacior,
Mittor,
Tangor,

Perf. Part.

jactus,
missus,
tactus,

Pres. Inf.

jaci, *to be thrown.*
mitti, *to be sent.*
tangī, *to be touched.*

✓ FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Active Voice.

AUDIO, *I hear.*

Polio, *I polish.* Vincio, *I bind.*

Principal Parts.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>
Audio,	audīvi,	audītum,	audīre, to hear.
Polio,	polīvi,	polītum,	polire, to polish.
Vincio,	vinxi,	vincitum,	vincīre, to bind.

*Indicative Mood.*Present Tense.—(*Prin. Part.*)Aud-io, *I hear, do hear, or am hearing.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Aud-io.	-is.	-it.	-īmus.	-ītis.	-iunt.
		Pol-io.	Vinc-io.		

Imperfect Tense.—(*Present.*)Audi-ēbam, *I heard, did hear, or was hearing.*

Audi-ēbam.	-ebas.	-ebat.	-ebāmus.	-ebātis.	-ebant.
		Poli-ēbam.	Vinci-ēbam.		

Perfect Tense.—(*Prin. Part.*)Audīv-i, *I heard, or have heard.*

Audīv-i.	-isti.	-it.	-īmus.	-istis.	-ērunt, or -ēre.
		Polīv-i.	Vinx-i.		

Pluperfect Tense.—(*Perfect.*)Audi-ēram, *I had heard.*

Audi-ēram.	-eras.	-erat.	-erāmus.	-erātis.	-erant.
		Poliv-ēram.	Vinx-ēram.		

Future Tense.—(*Present.*)Audi-am, *I shall, or will hear.*

Audi-am.	-es.	-et.	-ēmus.	-ētis.	-ent.
		Poli-am.	Vinci-am.		

Future-Perfect Tense.—(*Perfect.*)Audi-ēro, *I shall have heard.*

Audi-ēro.	-eris.	-erit.	-erimus.	-eritis.	-erint.
		Poliv-ēro.	Vinx-ēro.		

*Subjunctive Mood.*Present Tense.—(*Present.*)Audi-am, *I may, or can hear.*

Audi-am.	-as.	-at.	-āmus.	-ātis.	-ant.
		Poli-am.	Vinci-am.		

Imperfect Tense.—(*Pres. Inf.*)

Aud-irem, *I might, could, &c. hear.*

Aud-irem. -ires. -iret. -irēmus. -irētis. -irent.
Pol-irem. Vinc-irem.

Perfect Tense.—(*Perfect.*)

Audiv-ěrim, *I may have heard.*

Audiv-ěrim. -eris. -erit. -erīmus. -erītis. -erint.
Poliv-ěrim. Vinx-ěrim.

Pluperfect Tense.—(*Perfect.*)

Audiv-isse, *I might, could, &c. have heard.*

Audiv-isse. -isses. -isset. -issēmus. -issētis. -issent.
Poliv-isse. Vinx-isse.

Future Tense.—(*Fut. Part. and sim.*)

Audit-ūrus sim, *I may be about to hear, &c.*

Audit-ūrus sim. sis. sit. -urī simus. sitis. sint.
Polit-ūrus sim. Vinc-ūrus sim.

Imperative Mood.

Present Tense.—(*Pres. Inf.*)

Aud-i, or -īto, *hear thou, or do thou hear.*

— Aud-i, or -īto. -īto. — -īte, or -ītōte. -iunto.
Pol-i, or -īto. Vinc-i, or -īto.

Infinitive Mood.

Present and Imperfect Tense.—(*Prin. Part.*)

Aud-īre, *to hear, that I hear, that I was hearing.*

Pol-īre. Vinc-īre.

Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.—(*Perfect.*)

Audiv-isse, *to have heard, that I have heard, that I had heard.*

Poliv-isse. Vinx-isse.

Future Tense.—(*Fut. Part. and esse, or fuisse.*)

Audit-ūrus, -a, -um esse, *to be about to hear, that I will hear, that I would hear ;*

and Audit-ūrus, -a, -um fuisse, *to have been about to hear, that I would have heard.*

Polit-ūrus esse, or fuisse. Vinc-ūrus esse, or fuisse.

Participles.

Present and Imperfect.—(*Present.*)

Audi-ens, *hearing.*

Poli-ens. Vinci-ens.

Future.—(*Supine.*)

Audit-ūrus, -a, -um, *about to hear.*

Polit-ūrus. Vincit-ūrus.

Gerunds.—(*Pres. Participle.*)

Audien-dum, *hearing, &c.*

Polien-dum. Vincien-dum.

Supines.—(*Prin. Part.*)

Audit-um, *to hear.* Audit-u, *to hear, or to be heard.*

Polit-um. Vincit-um.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>
Condio,	condivi,	conditum,	condire, <i>to season.</i>
Nutrio,	nutrivi,	nutritum,	nutrire, <i>to nourish.</i>
Sepio,	sepsi,	septum,	sepīre, <i>to enclose.</i>
Gestio,	gestivi,	—————	gestire, <i>to exult.</i>

PASSIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>
Audior,	audītus,	audīri, <i>to be heard.</i>
Polior,	polītus,	polīri, <i>to be polished.</i>
Vincior,	vinctus,	vincīri, <i>to be bound.</i>

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.—(*Pres. Ind. Active.*)

Aud-ior, *I am heard.*

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>	
1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Aud-ior.	-iris, or -ire.	-itur.	-iuntur.	-iuntur.	-iuntur.
	Pol-ior.	Vinc-ior.			

Imperfect Tense.—(*Imp. Ind. Active.*)

Audi-ēbar, *I was heard.*

Audi-ēbar.	} -ebāris, or -ebāre.	-ebātur.	-ebāmur.	-ebamini.	-ebantur.
		Pol-ēbar.	Vinci-ēbar.		

Perfect Tense.—(*Perf. Part. and sum, or fui.*)

Audit-us sum, or fui, *I was, or have been heard.*

Audit-us sum, or fui, &c. -i sumus, or fuimus, &c.

Pol-ū sum, or fui. Vincit-us sum, or fui.

Pluperfect Tense.—(*Plup. Part. and eram, or fueram.*)

Audit-us eram, or fueram, *I had been heard.*

Audit-us eram, or fueram, &c. -i erāmus, or fuerāmus, &c.

Pol-ū eram, or fueram. Vincit-us eram, or fueram.

Future Tense.—(*Fut. Ind. Active.*)

Audi-ar, *I shall, or will be heard.*

Audi-ar. -ēris, or -ēre. -ētur. -ēmur. -emīni. -entur.
Poli-ar. Vinci-ar.

Future-Perfect Tense.—(*Perf. Part. and ero, or fuëro.*)

Audīt-us ero, or fuëro, *I shall have been heard.*

Audīt-us ero, or fuëro, &c. -i erimus, or fuerimus, &c.
Polīt-us ero, or fuëro. Vincit-us ero, or fuëro.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present Tense.—(*Pres. Sub. Active.*)

Audi-ar, *I may, or can be heard.*

Audi-ar. -āris, or -āre. -ātur. -āmur. -amīni, -antur.
Poli-ar. Vinci-ar.

Imperfect Tense.—(*Imp. Sub. Active.*)

Aud-īrer, *I might, could, &c. be heard.*

Aud-īrer. -irēris, or -irēre. -irētur. -irēmur. -iremīni. -irentur.
Pol-īrer. Vinc-īrer.

Perfect Tense.—(*Perf. Part. and sim, or fuërim.*)

Audīt-us sim, or fuërim, *I may have been heard.*

Audīt-us sim, or fuërim, &c. -i simus, or fuerimus, &c.
Polīt-us sim, or fuërim. Vincit-us sim, or fuërim.

Pluperfect Tense.—(*Perf. Part. and essem, or fuissēm.*)

Audīt-us essem, or fuissēm, *I might, &c. have been heard.*

Audīt-us essem, or fuissēm, &c. -i essēmus, or fuissēmus, &c.
Polīt-us essem, or fuissēm. Vincit-us essem, or fuissēm.

Imperative Mood.

Present Tense.—(*Pres. Imper. Active.*)

Aud-īre, or -ītor, *be thou heard.*

— Audi-īre, or -ītor. -ītor. — -imīni. -iuntor.
Pol-īre, or -ītor. Vinc-īre, or -ītor.

Infinitive Mood.

Present and Imperfect Tense.—(*Pres. Inf. Active.*)

Aud-īri, *to be heard, that I am heard, that I was heard.*

Pol-īri. Vinc-īri.

Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.—(*Perf. Part.* and *esse*, or *fuisse*.)

Audit-us, -a, -um esse, or fuisse, to have been heard, that I have been heard, that I had been heard.

Polit-us esse, or fuisse. Vinet-us esse, or fuisse.

Future Tense.—(*Supine* and *iri*.)

Audit-um iri, to be about to be heard, that I will be heard, that I would be heard.

Polit-um iri. Vincit-um iri.

Participles.

Perfect.—(*Supinc.*)

Audit-us, -a, -um, heard, or being heard.

Polit-us. Vincit-us.

Future.—(*Gerund.*)

Audien-dus, -da, -dum, to be heard, deserving, or requiring to be heard.

Polien-dus. Vincien-dus.

Pres. Ind.

Condior,

Nutrior,

Septior,

Perf. Part.

conditus,

nutritus,

septus,

Pres. Inf.

condiri, to be seasoned.

nutriri, to be nourished.

sepiri, to be enclosed.

Exercise showing the signification of the different Tenses of the Infinitive Mood, when preceded by a Verb and an Accusative.

Dicit me scribere, he says that I write, do write, or am writing.

Dixit me scribere, he said that I wrote, did write, or was writing.

Dicit me scripsisse, he says that I wrote, did write, or have written.

Dixit me scripsisse, he said that I had written.

Dicit me scripturum esse, he says that I will write.

Dixit me scripturum esse, he said that I would write.

Dicit me scripturum fuisse, he says that I would have written.

Dicit literas scribi, he says that letters are writing, are in the state of being written, or are being written.

Dixit literas scribi, he said that letters were writing, or being written.

Dicit literas scriptas esse, he says that letters are, or were written.

Dicit literas scriptas fuisse, he says that letters have been written.

Dixit literas scriptas fuisse, he said that letters had been written.

Dicit literas scriptum iri, he says that letters will be written.

Dixit literas scriptum iri, he said that letters would be written.

In Verbs which want the Supine, the Future Infinitive is supplied by *fore ut*, or *futurum esse ut*, with the Subjunctive: as, *scio fore* or *futurum esse ut lugeat*, I know that he will mourn; *scivi fore*, or *futurum esse ut lugeret*, I knew that he would mourn.

Different kinds of Verbs.

An *Active* Verb expresses some action of its nominative: as, *amo*, I love. When the action implied in the Verb is communicated to some other object, it is called *Active Transitive*: as, *amo patrem*, I love my father. When the action does not pass from the agent to any other object, the Verb is called *Active Intransitive*: as, *curro*, I run.

A *Passive* Verb denotes that its nominative is suffering, or is acted upon: as, *amor*, I am loved.

A *Neuter* Verb expresses neither action nor suffering, but simply the state, posture, or quality of its nominative: as, *palleo*, I am pale; *sedeo*, I sit; *gaudeo*, I am glad.

A *Substantive* Verb expresses being or existence. The Substantive Verbs are, *sum*, I am; *fio*, I am made; *forem*, I might be; *existo*, I exist.

A *Deponent* Verb has a Passive Termination, with an Active, or Neuter signification: as, *loquor*, I speak; *morior*, I die. Verbs are called *Deponent* because they have laid aside their Passive signification.

A *Common* Verb has a Passive termination with an Active and Passive signification: as, *crimīnor*, I accuse, or I am accused.

A *Neuter-Passive* Verb is partly Active and partly Passive in termination; and is Active, Passive, or Neuter in signification: as, *audeo*, I dare; *fio*, I am made; *gaudeo*, I rejoice.

A *Frequentative* Verb expresses a frequent repetition of the action, or an increase of the signification denoted by the primitive: as, *clamito*, I cry frequently, from *clamo*. Frequentatives are formed from the last Supine, by the change of *ātu* into *īto*, in Verbs of the First, and of *u* into *o*, in Verbs of the other Conjugations. They are all of the First Conjugation, and end in *īto*, *so*, *xo*, and, when Deponent, in *or*.

An *Inceptive* Verb expresses the beginning or continued increase of the action or state denoted by the primitive: as, *caleo*, I am warm; *calesco*, I grow warm. Inceptives are formed from the Second Person Singular of the Present Indicative, by adding *co*: as, *caleo*, *cales*, *cales-co*. They are all of the Third Conjugation, and want both Perfect and Supine. Inceptives are likewise formed from Nouns and Adjectives: as, *puerasco*, from *puer*; *dulcesco*, from *dulcis*.

A *Desiderative* Verb expresses a desire to do something. Desideratives are formed from the Future Participle Active, by changing *rus* into *rio*, and shortening the penultima: as, *cæno*, I sup; *cænatūrus*, *cænatūrio*, I desire to sup. They are all of the Fourth Conjugation, and want both Perfect and Supine, except *esūrio*, which is regularly conjugated, and *partūrio*, and *nuptūrio*, which have the Perfect.

Participle.

A *Participle* is a kind of Adjective derived from a Verb, which, in its signification, implies time. When Participles are divested of the idea of time, they admit degrees of Comparison.

There are four Participles; the Present and Imperfect, ending in *ns*; the Perfect, in *tus, sus, xus*; the Future Active, in *rus*; and the Future Passive, in *dus*. Those which end in *ns* and *rus* are generally Active; those in *dus* are always Passive; and those in *tus, sus, xus*, are generally Passive, but sometimes Active, or Common, according to the nature of the Verbs from which they come.

Active Verbs have two Participles, the Present and Future: as, *amans*, loving; *amatūrus*, about to love. *Active Verbs* have no Perfect Participle, but this defect is supplied by *quum*, with the Pluperfect Subjunctive: as, *quum amavisset*, when he had loved, or having loved.

Active Intransitive Verbs have frequently three Participles: as, *carens*, *caritūrus*, *carendus*, from *carco*; and sometimes four: as, *vigilans*, *vigilātus*, *vigilatūrus*, *vigilandus*, from *vigilo*.

Passive Verbs have two Participles, the Perfect and Future: as, *amātus*, loved; *amandus*, to be loved. The Future Participle often supplies the place of a Present Participle Passive.

Neuter Verbs have two Participles: as, *sedens*, *sessūrus*, from *scdeo*.

Deponent Verbs of an Active signification have generally four Participles: as, *loquens*, *locūtus*, *locutūrus*, *loquendus*, from *loquor*. Those of a Neuter signification have generally three: as, *labens*, *lapsus*, *lapsūrus*, from *labor*. The Perfect Participle of *Deponent Verbs* has an Active signification, and corresponds to the English Perfect Participle with *having*: as, *locūtus*, having spoken.

Common Verbs have generally four Participles: as, *crimīnans*, *crimīnātus*, *crimīnatūrus*, *crimīnandus*, from *crimīnor*. Their Perfect Participle has sometimes an Active, and sometimes a Passive signification: as, *crimīndtus*, having accused, or being accused.

Neuter Passive Verbs have generally three Participles: as, *gaudens*, *gavisus*, *gavisūrus*, from *gaudeo*.

DEPONENT VERBS.*

FIRST CONJUGATION.

CONOR, *I attempt.*

Pres. Ind.
Conor,

Perf. Part.
conātus,

Pres. Inf.
conāri, *to attempt.*

* Deponent Verbs are conjugated like the Passive Voice of the Conjugations to which they belong, except that they have four Participles, with the Gerunds, Supines, and Future of the Infinitive like Active Verbs. The Perfect Participle has an Active signification: as, *conātus*, *having attempted*, not *being attempted*.

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

Con-or, *I attempt, do attempt, or am attempting.**Singular.**Plural.*

1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Con-or.	-āris, or -āre.	-ātur.	-āmur.	-amīni.	-antur.

Imperfect Tense.

Con-ābar, *I attempted, did attempt, or was attempting.*

Con-ābar.	{ -abāris, or -abāre.	-abātur.	-abāmur.	-abamīni.	-abantur.
-----------	--------------------------	----------	----------	-----------	-----------

Perfect Tense.

Conāt-us sum, *or fui, I attempted, or have attempted.*

Conāt-us sum, <i>or fui, &c.</i>	-i sumus, <i>or fuimus, &c.</i>
--------------------------------------	-------------------------------------

Pluperfect Tense.

Conāt-us eram, *or fuëram, I had attempted.*

Conāt-us eram, <i>or fuëram, &c.</i>	-i erāmus, <i>or fuerāmus, &c.</i>
--	--

Future Tense.

Con-ābor, *I shall, or will attempt.*

Con-ābor.	{ -abēris, or -abēre.	-abītur.	-abīmur.	-abimīni.	-abuntur.
-----------	--------------------------	----------	----------	-----------	-----------

Future-Perfect Tense.

Conāt-us ero, *or fuëro, I shall have attempted.*

Conāt-us ero, <i>or fuëro, &c.</i>	-i erimus, <i>or fuerimus, &c.</i>
--	--

Subjunctive Mood.

Present Tense.

Con-er, *I may, or can attempt.*

Con-er.	-ēris, or -ēre.	-ētur.	-ēmur.	-emīni.	-entur.
---------	-----------------	--------	--------	---------	---------

Imperfect Tense.

Con-ārer, *I might, could, &c. attempt.*

Con-ārer,	{ -arēris, or -arēre.	-arētur.	-arēmur.	-aremīni.	-arentur
-----------	--------------------------	----------	----------	-----------	----------

Perfect Tense.

Conāt-us sim, *or fuërim, I may have attempted.*

Conāt-us sim, <i>or fuërim, &c.</i>	-i simus, <i>or fuerimus, &c.</i>
---	---------------------------------------

Pluperfect Tense.

Conāt-us essem, *or fuisssem, I might, &c. have attempted.*

Conāt-us essem, <i>or fuisssem, &c.</i>	-i essēmus, <i>or fuissēmus, &c.</i>
---	--

Imperative Mood.

Present Tense.

Con-āre, or -ātor, *attempt thou, or do thou attempt.*
 — Con-āre, or -ātor. -ātor. — -amīni. -antor

Infinitive Mood.

Present and Imperfect Tense.

Con-āri, *to attempt, that I attempt, that I was attempting.*

Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.

Conāt-us, -a, -um esse, *or fuisse, to have attempted, that I have attempted, that I had attempted.*

Future Tense.

Conat-ūrus, -a, -um esse, *to be about to attempt, that I will attempt, that I would attempt ;*

and Conat-ūrus, -a, -um fuisse, *to have been about to attempt, that I would have attempted.*

*Participles.*Present and Imperfect.—Conans, *attempting.*Perfect.—Conāt-us, -a, -um, *having attempted.*Fut. Active.—Conat-ūrus, -a, -um, *about to attempt.*

Fut. Passive.—Conan-dus, -da, -dum, *to be attempted, deserving, or requiring to be attempted.*

*Gerunds.*Nom. Conan-dum, *attempting.*

Gen. Conan-di, &c.

Supines.

Conāt-um, *to attempt.* Conāt-u, *to attempt, or to be attempted.*

Pres. Ind.

Causor,
Lætor,
Prædor,

Perf. Part.

causātus,
lætātus,
prædātus,

Pres. Inf.

causāri, *to blame.*
lætāri, *to rejoice.*
prædāri, *to plunder.*

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Pres. Ind.

Mereor,
Fateor,
Polliceor

Perf. Part.

merītus,
fassus,
pollicītus,

Pres. Inf.

merēri, *to deserve.*
fatēri, *to confess.*
pollicēri, *to promise.*

Conjugated like *Moneor*, page 38.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>
Utor,	usus,	uti, <i>to use.</i>
Morior,	mortuus,	mori, <i>to die.</i>
Sequor,	secūtus,	sequi, <i>to follow.</i>

Conjugated like *Regor*, page 43.

FOURTH CONJUGATION

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>
Blandior,	blanditus,	blandiri, <i>to flatter.</i>
Metior,	mensus,	metiri, <i>to measure.</i>
Ordior,	orsus,	ordiri, <i>to begin.</i>

Conjugated like *Audior*, page 48.

NEUTER-PASSIVE VERBS.

AUDEO, *I dare.*

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>
Audeo,	ausus,	audēre, <i>to dare.</i>

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

Aud-eo, *I dare, do dare, or am daring.*

Singular.

Plural.

1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Aud-eo.	-es.	-et.	-ēmus.	-ētis.	-ent.

Imperfect Tense.

Aud-ēbam, *I dared, did dare, or was daring.*

Aud-ēbam.	-ebas.	-ebat.	-ebāmus.	-ebātis.	-ebant.
-----------	--------	--------	----------	----------	---------

Perfect Tense.

Aus-us sum, *or fui, I dared, or have dared.*

Aus-us sum, <i>or fui, &c.</i>	-i sumus, <i>or fuimus, &c.</i>
------------------------------------	-------------------------------------

Pluperfect Tense.

Aus-us eram, *or fuēram, I had dared.*

Aus-us eram, <i>or fuēram, &c.</i>	-i erāmus, <i>or fuerāmus, &c.</i>
--	--

Future Tense.

Aud-ēbo, *I shall, or will dare.*

Aud-ēbo.	-ebis.	-ebit.	-ebīmus.	-ebītis.	-ebunt.
----------	--------	--------	----------	----------	---------

Future-Perfect Tense.

Aus-us ero, *or* fuëro, *I shall have dared.*Aus-us ero, *or* fuëro, &c. -i erimus, *or* fuerimus, &c.*Subjunctive Mood.*

Present Tense.

Aude-am, *I may, or can dare.*

Aude-am. -as. -at. -amus. -atis. -ant.

Imperfect Tense.

Aud-ërem, *I might, could, &c. dare.*

Aud-ërem. -eres. -eret. -erëmus. -erëtis. -erent.

Perfect Tense.

Aus-us sim, *or* fuërim, *I may have dared.*Aus-us sim, *or* fuërim, &c. -i simus, *or* fuerimus, &c.

Pluperfect Tense.

Aus-us essem, *or* fuisset, *I might, &c. have dared.*Aus-us essem, *or* fuisset, &c. -i essëmus, *or* fuissëmus, &c.*Imperative Mood.*

Present Tense.

Aud-e, *or* -ëto, *dare thou, or do thou dare.*Aud-e, *or* -ëto. -ëto. — -ëte, *or* -etôte. -ento.*Infinitive Mood.*

Present and Imperfect Tense.

Aud-ëre, *to dare, that I dare, that I was daring.*

Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.

Aus-us, -a, -um esse, *or* fuisse, *to have dared, that I have dared, that I had dared.*

Future Tense.

Aus-urus, -a, -um esse, *to be about to dare, that I will dare, that I would dare;**and* Aus-urus, -a, -um fuisse, *to have been about to dare, that I would have dared.**Participles.*Present and Imperfect.—Aud-ens, *daring.*Perfect.—Aus-us, -a, -um, *having dared.*Fut. Active—Aus-urus -a, -um, *about to dare.*Fut. P.—Auden-dus. -da. -dum, *to be dared, &c. (seldom used.)*

VERB.

Gerunds.

Nom. Auden-dum, *daring.* *Gen.* Auden-di, &c.

Supines.

Aus-um, *to dare.* Aus-u, *to dare, or to be dared.*

The other Neuter-Passive Verbs are,

Gaudeo,	gavisus,	gaudēre, <i>to rejoice.</i>
Soleo,	solitus,	solēre, <i>to be wont.</i>
Fido,	fishus,	fidēre, <i>to trust, with its compounds confido, I trust, and diffido, I distrust, which have also confidi, and diffidi, in the Perfect.</i>

IRREGULAR VERBS.

There are six Irregular Verbs: *sum, eo, queo, volo, fero, and fio*, with their Compounds.

The Compounds *absum, adsum, &c.* are declined like *sum* (see p. 24), except *subsum*, which wants the Perfect and the Tenses formed from it.

In *Prosum*, a *d* is inserted where *sum* begins with *e*.

PROSUM, *I do good.*

Prosum, profui, prodesse, *to do good.*

Indicative Mood.

<i>Pres.</i>	Pro-sum.	prod-es.	prod-est.	pro-sūmus.	prod-estis.
			pro-sunt.		
<i>Imp.</i>	Prod-eram.	-eras.	-erat.	-erāmus.	-erātis.
<i>Fut.</i>	Prod-ero.	-eris.	-erit.	-erimus.	-eritis.
				-erunt.	

Subjunctive Mood.

Imp. Prod-essem. -esses. -esset. -essēmus. -essētis. -essent.

Imperative Mood.

Pres. Prod-es, or -esto. -esto. -este, or -estōte. pro-sunto.

Infinitive Mood.

Pres. and Imp. Prod-esse.

In the other Tenses, *prosum* is declined like *sum*; *pro-fui, pro-fueram, pro-sim, &c.*

POSSUM, *I am able.*

Possum, potui, posse, *to be able.*

Indicative Mood.

<i>Pres.</i>	Pos-sum.	pot-es.	pot-est.	pos-sūmus.	pot-estis.	pos-sunt.
<i>Imp.</i>	Pot-eram.	-eras.	-erat.	-erāmus.	-erātis.	-erant.
<i>Perf.</i>	Potu-i.	-isti.	-it.	-īmus.	-istis.	-ērunt, or -ēre.
<i>Plup.</i>	Potu-eram.	-eras.	-erat.	-erāmus.	-erātis.	-erant.
<i>Fut.</i>	Pot-ero.	-eris.	-erit.	-erimus.	-eritis.	-erunt.
<i>Fut.-P.</i>	Potu-ero.	-eris.	-erit.	-erimus.	-eritis.	-erint.

Subjunctive Mood.

<i>Pres.</i>	Pos-sim.	-sis.	-sit.	-sīmus.	-sītis.	-sint.
<i>Imp.</i>	Pos-sem.	-ses.	-set.	-sēmus.	-sētis.	-sent.
<i>Perf.</i>	Potu-erim.	-eris.	-erit.	-erīmus.	-erītis.	-erint.
<i>Plup.</i>	Potu-issem.	-isses.	-isset.	-issēmus.	-issētis.	-issent.

(No Imperative.)

*Infinitive Mood.**Pres.* and *Imp.* Posse. *Perf.* and *Plup.* Potuisse.*Participle, Pres.* and *Imp.* Potens, able, is always used as an Adjective. *The rest not used.**Possum* is compounded of *potis*, able, and *sum*.*Eo, I go.**Eo, Ivi, itum, ire, to go.**Indicative Mood.*

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Eo.</i>	is.	it.	īmus.	ītis.	eunt.
<i>Imp.</i>	Ibam.	ibas.	ibat.	ibāmus.	ibātis.	ibant.
<i>Perf.</i>	Ivi.	ivisti.	ivit.	ivīmus.	ivistis.	{ ivērunt, or ivēre.
<i>Plup.</i>	Iveram.	iveras.	iverat.	iverāmus.	iverātis.	
<i>Fut.</i>	Ibo.	ibis.	ibit.	ibīmus.	ibītis.	ibunt.
<i>Fut.-P.</i>	Ivëro.	iveris.	iverit.	iverimus.	iveritis.	iverint.

Subjunctive Mood.

<i>Pres.</i>	Eam.	eas.	cat.	eāmus.	eātis.	eant.
<i>Imp.</i>	Irem.	ires.	iret.	irēmus.	irētis.	irent.
<i>Perf.</i>	Ivërim.	iveris.	iverit.	iverīmus.	iverītis.	iverint.
<i>Plup.</i>	Ivissem.	ivisses.	ivisset.	ivissēmus.	ivissētis.	ivissent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Itūrus sim.	sis.	sit.	-i simus.	sītis.	sint.

*Imperative Mood.**Pres.* — I, or ito. ito. — ite, or itôte. eunto.*Infinitive Mood.**Participles.**Pres.* and *Imp.* Ire.*Pres.* and *Imp.* Iens.*Gen.* euntia*Perf.* and *Plup.* Ivisse.*Fut.* It-ūrus, -a, -urn.*Fut.* It-ūrus, -a, -um esse ;
and It-ūrus, -a, -um fuisse.

Gerunds.

Nom. Eundum.
Gen. Eundi, -do; &c.

Supines.

Itum.
Itu.

Eo is, for the most part, formed regularly according to the Fourth Conjugation. It is used in the Passive as an Impersonal only: as, *itur, ibātur, &c.*

The Compounds of *eo* generally reject *v* in the Perfect and the Tenses formed from it: as, *abeo, abii*, seldom *abīvi, abītum, abīre*, to go away. *Ambio, -īvi, -ītum, -īre*, to surround, is a regular Verb of the Fourth Conjugation.

Queo, I can, *nequeo*, I cannot, and *veneo*, I am sold, are conjugated like *eo*, except that they want the Imperative and Gerunds, and *veneo* has no Participles or Supines.

VOLO, I am willing, I wish.

Völo, volui, velle, to be willing, to wish.

Indicative Mood.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Völo.</i>	<i>vis.</i>	<i>vult.</i>	<i>volūmus.</i>	<i>vultis.</i>	<i>volunt.</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>Vol-ēbam.</i>	<i>-ebas.</i>	<i>-ebat.</i>	<i>-ebāmus.</i>	<i>-ebātis.</i>	<i>-ebant.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Volu-i.</i>	<i>-isti.</i>	<i>-it.</i>	<i>-īmus.</i>	<i>-istis.</i>	{ <i>-ērunt,</i> <i>or -ēre.</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>Volu-eram.</i>	<i>-eras.</i>	<i>-erat.</i>	<i>-erāmus.</i>	<i>-erātis.</i>	<i>-erant.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>Vol-am.</i>	<i>-es.</i>	<i>-et.</i>	<i>-ēmus.</i>	<i>-ētis.</i>	<i>-ent.</i>
<i>Fut.-P.</i>	<i>Volu-ero.</i>	<i>-eris.</i>	<i>-erit.</i>	<i>-erimus.</i>	<i>-eritis.</i>	<i>-erint.</i>

Subjunctive Mood.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Vel-im.</i>	<i>-is.</i>	<i>-it.</i>	<i>-īmus.</i>	<i>-itis.</i>	<i>-int.</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>Vel-lem.</i>	<i>-les.</i>	<i>-let.</i>	<i>-lēmus.</i>	<i>-lētis.</i>	<i>-lent.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Volu-erim.</i>	<i>-eris.</i>	<i>-erit.</i>	<i>-erīmus.</i>	<i>-erītis.</i>	<i>-erint.</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>Volu-isse.</i>	<i>-isses.</i>	<i>-isset.</i>	<i>-issēmus.</i>	<i>-issētis.</i>	<i>-issent.</i>

(No Imperative.)

Infinitive Mood.

Pres. and Imp. Velle. Perf. and Plup. Voluisse.

Participle, Pres. and Imp. Volens, willing, is commonly used as an Adjective. The rest not used.

Nolo, I am unwilling.

Nölo, nolui, nolle, to be unwilling. (non and volo.)

Indicative Mood.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Nölo.</i>	<i>nonvis.</i>	<i>nonvult.</i>	<i>nolūmus.</i>	<i>nonvultis.</i>	<i>nolunt.</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>Nol-ēbam.</i>	<i>-ebas.</i>	<i>-ebat.</i>	<i>-ebāmus.</i>	<i>-ebātis.</i>	<i>-ebant.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Nolu-i.</i>	<i>-isti.</i>	<i>-it.</i>	<i>-īmus.</i>	<i>-istis.</i>	{ <i>-ērunt,</i> <i>or -ēre.</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>Nolu-eram.</i>	<i>-eras.</i>	<i>-erat.</i>	<i>-erāmus.</i>	<i>-erātis.</i>	<i>-erant.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>Nol-am.</i>	<i>-es.</i>	<i>-et.</i>	<i>-ēmus.</i>	<i>-ētis.</i>	<i>-ent.</i>
<i>Fut.-P.</i>	<i>Nolu-ero.</i>	<i>-eris.</i>	<i>-erit.</i>	<i>-erimus.</i>	<i>-eritis.</i>	<i>-erint.</i>

Subjunctive Mood.

<i>Pres.</i>	Nol-im.	-is.	-it.	-imus.	-itis.	-int.
<i>Imp.</i>	Nol-lem.	-les.	-let.	-lēmus.	-lētis.	-lent.
<i>Perf.</i>	Nolu-ērim.	-eris.	-erit.	-erimus.	-eritis.	-erint.
<i>Plup.</i>	Nolu-isse.	-isses.	-isset.	-issēmus.	-issētis.	-issent.

Imperative Mood.

<i>Pres.</i>	—	Nol-i, or -ito.	—	-ite, or -itōte.	—
--------------	---	-----------------	---	------------------	---

Infinitive Mood.

Pres. and *Imp.* Nolle. *Perf.* and *Plup.* Noluisse.

Participle. *Pres.* and *Imp.* Nolens, *unwilling*, is commonly used as an Adjective. *The rest not used.*

MALO, *I am more willing, I prefer.*

Mālo, malui, malle, *to be more willing, to prefer.*
(*mage and volo.*)

Indicative Mood.

<i>Pres.</i>	Mālo.	mavis.	mavult.	malūmus.	mavultis.	malunt.
<i>Imp.</i>	Mal-ēbam.	-ebas.	-ebat.	-ebāmus.	-ebātis.	-ebant.
<i>Perf.</i>	Malu-i.	-isti.	-it.	-imus.	-istis.	{ -ērunt, or -ēre.
<i>Plup.</i>	Malu-eram.	-eras.	-erat.	-erāmus.	-erātis.	-erant.
<i>Fut.</i>	Mal-am.	-es.	-et.	-ēmus.	-ētis.	-ent.
<i>Fut.-P.</i>	Malu-ero.	-eris.	-erit.	-erimus.	-eritis.	-erint.

Subjunctive Mood.

<i>Pres.</i>	Mal-im.	-is.	-it.	-imus.	-itis.	-int.
<i>Imp.</i>	Mal-lem.	-les.	-let.	-lēmus.	-lētis.	-lent.
<i>Perf.</i>	Malu-ērim.	-eris.	-erit.	-erimus.	-eritis.	-erint.
<i>Plup.</i>	Malu-isse.	-isses.	-isset.	-issēmus.	-issētis.	-issent.

(*No Imperative.*)

Infinitive Mood.

Pres. and *Imp.* Malle. *Perf.* and *Plup.* Maluisse.

The rest not used.

Volo, nolo, and malo, retain something of the Third Conjugation; *ois, vult, vultis, &c.* being contracted for *volis, volit, volitis, &c.*

ACTIVE VOICE.

FERO, *I carry, I bring, I suffer.*

Fēro, tūli, lātum, ferre, *to carry, to bring, to suffer.*

Indicative Mood.

<i>Pres.</i>	Fĕro.	fers.	fert.	ferĭmus.	fertis.	ferunt.
<i>Imp.</i>	Fer-ĕbam.	-ebas.	-ebat.	-ebāmus.	-ebātis.	-ebant.
<i>Perf.</i>	Tŭl-i.	-isti.	-it.	-ĭmus.	-istis.	} -ĕrunt, or -ĕre.
<i>Plup.</i>	Tul-ĕram.	-eras.	-erat.	-erāmus.	-erātis.	
<i>Fut.</i>	Fer-am.	-es.	-et.	-ĕmus.	-ĕtis.	-ent.
<i>Fut.-P.</i>	Tul-ĕro.	-eris.	-erit.	-erimus.	-eritis.	-erint.

Subjunctive Mood.

<i>Pres.</i>	Fer-am.	-as.	-at.	-āmus.	-ātis.	-ant.
<i>Imp.</i>	Fer-rem.	-res.	-ret.	-rĕmus.	-rĕtis.	-rent.
<i>Perf.</i>	Tul-ĕrim.	-eris.	-erit.	-erĭmus.	-erĭtis.	-erint.
<i>Plup.</i>	Tul-isse.	-isses.	-isset.	-issĕmus.	-issĕtis.	-issent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Lat-ŭrus sim.	sis.	sit.	-ĭ simus.	sitis.	sint.

Imperative Mood.

Pres.—Fer,* or fertō. fertō. — ferte, or fertōte. ferunto.

Infinitive Mood.

Pres. and *Imp.* Ferre.
Perf. and *Plup.* Tulisse.
Fut. Lat-ŭrus, -a, -um esse ;
 and Lat-ŭrus, -a, -um fuisse.

Participles.

Pres. and *Imp.* Ferens.
Fut. Lat-ŭrus, -a, -um.

Gerunds.

Nom. Feren-dum. -di ; &c.

Supines.

Lāt-um. Lāt-u.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Fĕror, lātus, ferri, to be carried, &c.

Indicative Mood.

<i>Pres.</i>	Fĕror.	ferris, or ferre.	fertur.	ferĭmur.	ferimĭni.	feruntur.
<i>Imp.</i>	Fer-ĕbar.	{ -ebāris, or -ebāre.	-ebātur.	-ebāmur.	-ebamĭni.	-ebantur.
<i>Perf.</i>	Lāt-us sum, or fui, &c.		-i sumus, or fuĭmus, &c.			
<i>Plup.</i>	Lāt-us eram, or fuĕram, &c.	-i erāmus, or fuerāmus, &c.				
<i>Fut.</i>	Fer-ar.	-ĕris, or -ĕre.	-ĕtur.	-ĕmur.	-enĭni.	-entur.
<i>Fut.-P.</i>	Lāt-us ero, or fuĕro, &c.	-i erimus, or fuerimus, &c.				

* Dico, I say ; duco, I lead ; and facio, I make, have the Imperative formed in a similar manner ; dic, duc, fac ; and in the compounds effer, educ, calĕfac ; except in those compounds of facio, which change a into i : as, confice, perfice.

Subjunctive Mood.

Pres. Fer-ar. -āris, or -āre. -ātur. -āmur. -amīni. -antur.
Imp. Fer-rer. -rēris, or -rēre. -rētur. -rēmur. -remīni. -rentur.
Perf. Lāt-us sim, or fuērim, &c. -i simus, or fuerīmus, &c.
Plup. Lāt-us essem, or fuissēm, &c. -i essēmus, or fuissēmus, &c.

Imperative Mood.

Pres. — Ferre, or fertor. fertor. — ferimīni. feruntor.

Infinitive Mood.

Pres. and *Imp.* Ferri.

Participles.

Perf. Lāt-us, -a, -um.

Fut. Feren-dus, -da, -dum.

Perf. and *Plup.* Lāt-us, -a, -um esse, or fuisse.

Fut. Lāt-um iri.

Fero is a Verb of the Third Conjugation, *fers, fert, fertis, &c.* being contracted for *feris, ferit, feritis, &c.*

The compounds of *fēro* are conjugated in the same way; *affēro* (*ad* and *fēro*), *attūli, allātum, afferre*, to bring to; *aufēro* (*ab* and *fēro*), *abstūli, ablātum, auferre*, to take away; *confēro, contūli, collātum, conferre*, to bring together; *diffēro* (*dis* and *fēro*), *distūli, dilātum, differre*, to disperse; *effēro* (*ex* and *fēro*), *extūli, elātum, efferre*, to bring out; *infēro, intūli, illātum, inferre*, to bring into; *offēro* (*ob* and *fēro*), *obtūli, oblātum, offerre*, to offer; and *suffēro* (*sub* and *fēro*), *sufferre*, to endure, which wants both Perfect and Supine.

FIO, I am made, or I become.

Fio, factus, fiēri, to be made, or to become.

Indicative Mood.

Pres. Fīo. fis. fit. fimus. fitis. fiunt.
Imp. Fī-ēbam. -ebas. -ebat. -ebāmus. -ebātis. -ebant.
Perf. Fact-us sum, or fui, &c. -i sumus, or fuīmus, &c.
Plup. Fact-us eram, or fuēram, &c. -i erāmus, or fuerāmus, &c.
Fut. Fī-am. -es. -et. -ēmus. -ētis. -ent.
Fut.-P. Fact-us ero, or fuēro, &c. -i erimus, or fuerimus, &c.

Subjunctive Mood.

Pres. Fī-am. -as. -at. -āmus. -ātis. -ant.
Imp. Fī-ērem. -eres. -eret. -erēmus. -erētis. -erent.
Perf. Fact-us sim, or fuērim, &c. -i simus, or fuerīmus, &c.
Plup. Fact-us essem, or fuissēm, &c. -i essēmus, or fuissēmus, &c.

Imperative Mood.

Pres. — Fī, or fīto. fīto. — fīte, or fītōte. fiunto.

Infinitive Mood.

Pres. and *Imp.* Fīēri.

Perf. and *Plup.* Factus, -a, -um esse, or fuisse.

Fut. Fact-um iri.

Participles.

Perf. Fact-us, -a, -um. *Fut.* Facien-dus, -da, -dum.
Supine. Fact-u.

The Third Person Singular is often used impersonally: as, *fit*, it happens; *fiēbat*, it happened; &c.

Fio is used as the Passive of *facio*, from which it takes the Participles. The compounds of *facio*, which retain *a*, have *fio* in the Passive: as, *calefacio*, I warm; *calefīo*; &c. But those compounds which change *facio* into *facio* have the regular Passive in *ficior*: as, *conficio*, *conficior*; &c.

To the Irregular Verbs may be added *edo*, I eat, which, in some of its tenses, agrees with *sum*: thus,

Edo, ēdī, ēsum, edēre, or esse, to eat.

Indicative Mood.

Pres. Edo. { ēdis, { edit, edīmus. { edītis, edunt.
 { or es. { or est. { or estis.

Subjunctive Mood.

Imp. { Edērem, ederes, ederet, ederēmus, ederētis, ederent,
 { or essem. or esses. or esset. or essēmus. or essētis. or essent.

Imperative Mood.

Pres. — { Ede, or edīto, edīto, — edīte, or editōte, edunto.
 { or es, or esto. or esto. — or este, or estōte.

Infinitive. *Pres.* and *Imp.* Edēre, or esse.

The compounds of *edo* are conjugated in the same manner, but, in the other Tenses, they are regular Verbs of the Third Conjugation.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Verbs are called *Defective* which are used only in a few Tenses and Persons.

I. The following most frequently occur: *Aio*, *inquam*, *forem*, *ausim*, *faxo*, *ave*, *salve*, *cedo*, and *quæso*.

Aio, I say.

Indicative Mood.

Pres. Aio. aīs. aīt. — — aiunt.
Imp. Ai-ēbam. -ebas. -ebat. -ebāmus. -ebātis. -ebant.
Perf. — aisti. — — — —

Subjunctive Mood.

Pres. — aias. aiat. — aiātis. aiant.

Imperative. Pres. Ai. *Participle. Pres. and Imp. Aiens*

INQUAM, *I say.*

Indicative Mood.

Pres. In-quam. -quis. -quit. -quimus. -quitis. -quiunt.

Imp. ——— ——— inquit̄bat. ——— ——— inquit̄bant.

Perf. ——— inquisti. ——— ——— ———

Fut. ——— inquires. inquiet. ——— ——— ———

Imperative. Pres. Inque, or inquit̄o.

Participle. Pres. and Imp. Inquiens.

FOREM, *I might be, or I might have been.*

Subjunctive Mood.

Imp. and Plup. For-em. -es. -et. -ēmus. -ētis. -ent.

Infinitive. Pres. and Imp. Fore, to be, or to be about to be.

Forem, contracted for *fuërem*, seems to be the *Imp. Sub.* of the old Verb *fuō*, and is therefore used for *essem*, and sometimes for *fuissem*. *Fore* is properly the *Pres. and Imp. Infinitive*, but is commonly used as the *Future* for *futūrus esse*.

AUSIM, *I may dare.*

Subjunctive Mood.

Pres. Aus-im. -is. -it. ——— ——— -int.

Ausim is contracted for *ausërim*, which was anciently used for *ausus sim*.

FAXO, *I shall see to it, or do it.*

Indicative Mood.

Fut.-P. Faxo. -is. -it. ——— -itis. -int.

Subjunctive Mood.

Perf. Fax-im. -is. -it. ——— ——— -int.

Faxo and *faxim* are contracted for *fecëro* and *fecërim*, and are used in the same sense.

AVE, and SALVE, *God save you, hail, good morrow.*

Imperative Mood.

Pres. ——— Av-e, or -ëto. ——— ——— av-ëte, or -etôte. ———

Infinitive. Pres. and Imp. Avëre.

Imperative Mood.

Pres. ——— Salv-e, or -ëto. ——— ——— salv-ëte, or -etôte. ———

Infinitive. Pres. and Imp. Salvëre.

Salves the 2. Sing. *Pres. Ind.* and *salvëbis* the 2. Sing. *Fut. Ind.* are also found.

CEDO, *tell, or give.*

Imperative Mood.

Pres. — Cedo. — — — ceditē. —

Cedo is used both as Singular and Plural; *cedite*, as Plural only, and contracted *cette*.

QUÆSO, *I pray, or I beseech.*

Indicative Mood.

Pres. Quæso. — — — quæsumus. — —

II. These three Verbs, *ōdi*, *memini*, *cæpi*, are called *Preteritive Verbs*, because they have only the Perfect and the Tenses formed from it.

The first two have, in the Perfect, the signification of the Present and Perfect; in the Pluperfect, that of the Imperfect and Pluperfect; and in the Future-Perfect, that of the Future and Future-Perfect.

ODI, *I hate, or I have hated.*

Indicative Mood.

<i>Perf.</i>	Od-i.	-isti.	-it.	-imus.	-istis.	} -ērunt, or -ēre.
<i>Plup.</i>	Od-eram.	-eras.	-erat.	-erāmus.	-erātis.	
<i>Fut.-P.</i>	Od-ero.	-eris.	-erit.	-erimus.	-eritis.	-erint.

Subjunctive Mood.

<i>Perf.</i>	Od-erim.	-eris.	-erit.	-erimus.	-eritis.	-erint.
<i>Plup.</i>	Od-issem.	-isses.	-isset.	-issēmus.	-issētis.	-issent.

Infinitive. *Perf.* and *Plup.* *Odisse.*

Participles. *Perf.* *Osus*, *having hated.* *Fut.* *Osūrus.*

Odērit and *Odērint* sometimes supply the place of an Imperative.

In the same manner *Memini*, I remember, or I have remembered; and *Cæpi*, I have begun, are conjugated. *Memini* has *memento* and *mementôte*, the Second persons Singular and Plural of the Imperative; and to *Cæpi* are assigned the Perfect Participle *cæptus*, begun, or having begun, the Future Participle *cæptūrus*, and the Supine *cæptu*. *Cæpi* has also a Perfect Passive *cæptus sum*, of the same meaning as the Active, but used with Passive Infinitives.

To these some add *Novi*, because it frequently has the signification of the Present, *I know*, as well as *I have known*, though it comes from *nosco*, which is complete.

III. *Fari*, to speak, and *dari*, to be given, are not used in the First Person Sing. of the Pres. Indicative and Subjunctive. Of *fari*, only *fatur*, *fabor*; the Imperative, *fare*; the Participles, *fans*, *futus*, *fandus*; the Gerunds, *fandi*, and *fando*; and the Supine, *fatu*, are commonly used.

Furēre, to be mad, wants the First Per. Sing. and the Sec. Per. Plur. of the Pres., and probably all the Future of the Indicative; and the Imperative. It likewise wants the Perfect and Supine.

Of the following Verbs the subjoined persons only are found: *apūge*, be gone; *infīt*, he begins; *confīt*, it is done; *confīet*, *confīeret*, *confīeri*; *defīt*, it is wanting, *defīet*, *defīat*, *defīeri*; *ovas*, thou rejoicest, *ovat*, *ovet*, *ovāret*, *ovans*, *ovātus*, *ovandī*.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Verbs are called *Impersonal*, which are used only in the Third Person Singular, and which do not admit a person as their Nominative.

They belong to all the Conjugations, and, when literally translated, have the Pronoun *it* before them.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Delectat, *it delights.*

Delect-at, -āvit, -āre.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Decet, *it becomes.*

Dec-et, -uit, -ēre.

Indicative Mood.

Pres. Delect-at, *it delights.*

Dec-et, *it becomes.*

Imp. Delect-ābat, *it delighted.*

Dec-ēbat, *it became.*

Perf. Delectāv-it, *it has delighted.*

Decu-it, *it has become.*

Plup. Delectav-ērat, *it had delighted.*

Decu-ērat, *it had become.*

Fut. Delect-ābit, *it will delight.*

Dec-ēbit, *it will become.*

Fut.-P. Delectav-ērit, *it shall have de-*

Decu-ērit, *it shall have become.*

[lighted.

Subjunctive Mood.

Pres. Delect-et, *it may delight.*

Dec-eat, *it may become.*

Imp. Delect-āret, *it might delight.*

Dec-eret, *it might become.*

Perf. Delectav-ērit, *it may have delighted.*

Decu-ērit, *it may have become.*

Plup. Delectav-isset, *it might have de-*

Decu-isset, *it might have be-*

[lighted.

[come.

Infinitive Mood.

Pres. and Imp. Delect-āre, *to delight, &c.*

Dec-ēre, *to become, &c.*

Perf. and Plup. Delectav-isse, *to have delight-*

Decu-isse, *to have be-*

[ed, &c.

come, &c.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Accīdit, *it happens.*

Accīd-it, -it, -ēre.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Evēnit, *it happens.*

Evēn-it, evēn-it, -īre.

Indicative Mood.

Pres. Accīd-it, *it happens.*

Evēn-it, *it happens.*

Imp. Accīd-ēbat, *it happened.*

Eveni-ēbat, *it happened.*

Perf. Accīd-it, *it has happened; &c.*

Evēn-it, *it has happened; &c.*

Most Verbs may be used impersonally in the Passive Voice, especially Neuter and Intransitive Verbs, which otherwise have no Passive: as, *pugnātur*, *favētur*, *currītur*, *venītur*; from *pugno*, I fight; *faveo*, I favour; *curro*, I run; *venio*, I come.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Pugnātur, *it is fought.*

Pugn-ātur, -ātum est, -āri.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Favētur, *it is favoured.*

Fav-ētur, fautum est, favēri.

Indicative Mood.

Pres. Pugnātur, *it is fought.*

Favētur, *it is favoured.*

Imp. Pugnabātur, *it was fought.*

Favebātur, *it was favoured.*

Perf. Pugnātum est, *it has been*

Fautum est, *it has been fa-*

[*fought.*

[*voured.*

Plup. Pugnātum erat, *it had been*

Fautum erat, *it had been fa-*

[*fought.*

[*voured.*

Fut. Pugnabitur, *it will be fought.*

Favebitur, *it will be favoured.*

Fut.-P. Pugnātum fuerit, *it shall have*

Fautum fuerit, *it shall have*

[*been fought.*

[*been favoured.*

Subjunctive Mood.

Pres. Pugnētur, *it may be fought.*

Faveātur, *it may be favoured.*

Imp. Pagnarētur, *it might be fought.*

Faverētur, *it might be favoured.*

Perf. Pugnātum sit, *it may have been*

Fautum sit, *it may have been*

[*fought.*

[*favoured.*

Plup. Pugnātum esset, *it might have*

Fautum esset, *it might have*

[*been fought.*

[*been favoured.*

Infinitive Mood.

Pres. and Imp. Pugnāri, *to be fought, &c.*

Perf. and Plup. Pugnātum esse, *to have been fought, &c.*

Fut. Pugnātum iri, *to be about to be fought, &c.*

Pres. and Imp. Favēri, *to be favoured, &c.*

Perf. and Plup. Fautum esse, *to have been favoured, &c.*

Fut. Fautum iri, *to be about to be favoured, &c.*

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Currītur, *it is run.*

Currītur, cursum est, curri.

FOURTH CONJUGATION

Venītur, *it is come.*

Venītur, ventum est, venīri.

Indicative Mood.

Pres. Currītur, *it is run.*

Venītur, *it is come.*

Imp. Currebātur, *it was run.*

Veniebātur, *it was come.*

Perf. Cursum est, *it has been run; &c.* Ventum est, *it has been come; &c.*

Verbs, which, in the Active Voice, do not govern the Accusative, are used only impersonally in the Passive: as, *persuadētur mihi*, I am persuaded; not, *persuadeor*.

Impersonal Verbs want the Imperative, and generally the Participles, Gerunds, and Supines. The Imperative, when necessary, is supplied by the Present Subjunctive: as, *delectet*, let him delight.

Impersonal Verbs are applied to any person or number, by putting the words which form the Nominative to regular Verbs, after them, in the cases which they govern: as, *delectat me*, it delights me, or I delight; *delectat te*, thou delightest; *delectat hominem*, the man delights; *delectat nos, vos, homines*, we, ye, the men delight. *Placet*

mihi, tibi, homini, it pleases me, thee, the man ; or, I please, thou pleasest, the man pleases, &c. *Pugnatur a me, a te, ab homine*, I fight, thou fightest, the man fights, &c.

ADVERB.

An Adverb is a word added to a Verb, Adjective, or other Adverb, to express the Time, Place, or Manner in which any thing is done.

I. The Adverbs of *Time* are, *nunc*, now ; *tunc*, then ; &c.

II. The Adverbs of *Place* are, *ubi*, where ? *hic*, here ; &c.

III. The Adverbs of *Manner, Quality, &c.* are, *perfecto*, truly ; *satis*, enough ; *iisdem*, in like manner ; &c.

The *Simple, or Primitive* Adverbs are few in number : as, *non*, *haud*, not ; *ibi*, there ; *mox*, presently ; *tunc*, then ; &c.

The *Derivative* Adverbs are numerous, and are formed in the following manner :

1. Adverbs derived from Adjectives of the First and Second Declension generally end in *e* : as, *alte*, highly, from *altus* ; *libère*, freely, from *liber*. They sometimes end in *o, um, or ter* : as, *tuto*, safely, from *tutus* ; *tantum*, so much, from *tantus* ; *dure*, and *duriter*, hardly, from *durus*.

2. Adverbs derived from Adjectives of the Third Declension generally end in *ter* : as, *feliciter*, happily, from *felix*. They sometimes end in *e* : as, *facile*, easily, from *facilis*. One ends in *o* : *omnino*, altogether, from *omnis*.

The Neuter Gender of Adjectives is often used adverbially : as, *recente*, recently, for *recenter* ; *torva*, sternly, for *torve*.

3. Adverbs derived from Nouns generally end in *im, or itus* ; as, *viritim*, man by man, from *vir* ; *funditus*, from the ground, from *fundus*. Many Adverbs in *im* are derived from Participles : as, *sensim*, by degrees, from *sensus* (*sentio*, I perceive). A few Adverbs in *itus* are derived from Adjectives : as, *antiquitus*, anciently, from *antiquus*.

4. Adverbs are formed by Composition in various ways : as, *hodie*, to-day, from *hoc die* ; *sciñcet*, truly, from *scire licet* ; *quomodo*, how, from *quo modo* ; *quamobrem*, wherefore ? from *ob quam rem*.

Adverbs derived from Adjectives are compared, and are subject to the same irregularities and defects as their Primitives. The Positive generally ends in *e, or ter* ; the Comparative in *ius* ; the Superlative in *ime* : as,

<i>Pos.</i>	<i>Comp.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>
<i>Alte, highly ;</i>	<i>Altius,</i>	<i>Altissime.</i>
<i>Fortiter, bravely ;</i>	<i>Fortius,</i>	<i>Fortissime.</i>
<i>Libère, freely ;</i>	<i>Liberius,</i>	<i>Liberrime.</i>
<i>Tuto, safely ;</i>	<i>Tutius,</i>	<i>Tutissime.</i>

The following Adverbs are compared *irregularly*, like the Adjectives from which they are derived :

Bene, <i>well</i> ;	Melius,	Optīme.
Facīle, <i>easily</i> ;	Facilius,	Facillīme.
Male, <i>badly</i> ;	Pejus,	Pessīme.
Multum, <i>much</i> ;	Plus,	Plurimum.
Parum, <i>little</i> ;	Minus,	{ Minīme.
Prope, <i>near</i> ;	Propius,	{ Minimum.
		Proximē.

Positive wanting.

Magis, *more*, maxīme ; ocius, *more swiftly*, ocissīme ; prius *sooner*, primo, or primum ; potius, *rather*, potissimum.

Comparative wanting.

Pene, *almost*, penissīme ; nuper, *lately*, nuperrīme ; nove, or noviter, *newly*, novissīme ; merito, *deservedly*, meritissīmo.

Superlative wanting.

Satis, *enough*, satius ; secus, *otherwise*, secius.

Two Adverbs not derived from Adjectives are also compared : diu, long, diutius, diutissīme ; sæpe, often, sæpius, sæpissīme.

PREPOSITION.

A Preposition is a word placed before Nouns and Pronouns, to show their relation to other words.

Prepositions are placed before, or govern the Accusative, or Ablative.

There are twenty-eight Prepositions which govern the Accusative :

Ad, <i>to</i> , <i>at</i> .	Infra, <i>beneath</i> .
Apud, <i>at</i> , <i>near</i> .	Juxta, <i>nigh to</i> .
Ante, <i>before</i> .	Ob, <i>for</i> , <i>on account of</i> .
Adversus, } <i>against</i> , <i>towards</i> .	Propter, <i>for</i> , <i>because of</i> .
Adversum, }	Per, <i>by</i> , <i>through</i> .
Contra, <i>against</i> , <i>overagainst</i> .	Præter, <i>beside</i> , <i>except</i> .
Cis, } <i>on this side</i> .	Penes, <i>in the power of</i> .
Citra, }	Post, <i>after</i> , <i>since</i> .
Circa, }	Pone, <i>behind</i> .
Circum, }	Secus, <i>by</i> , <i>along</i> .
Erga, <i>towards</i> .	Secundum, <i>according to</i> .
Extra, <i>without</i> , <i>out of</i> .	Supra, <i>above</i> .
Inter, <i>between</i> , <i>among</i> .	Trans, <i>across</i> , <i>on the farther side</i> .
Intra, <i>within</i> .	Ultra, <i>beyond</i> .

There are fifteen Prepositions which govern the Ablative :

A,	} <i>from, by.</i>	E,	} <i>of, out of.</i>
Ab,		Ex,	
Abs,		Pro, <i>for.</i>	
Absque, <i>without.</i>		Præ, <i>before, in comparison of.</i>	
Cum, <i>with, along with.</i>		Palam, <i>with the knowledge of.</i>	
Clam, <i>without the knowledge of.</i>		Sine, <i>without.</i>	
Coram, <i>before, in presence of.</i>		Tenus, <i>up to, as far as.</i>	
De, <i>of, concerning.</i>			

There are four Prepositions which govern sometimes the Accusative, and sometimes the Ablative.

In, *in, into.* Sub, *under.* Super, *above.* Subter, *beneath.*

Tenus is placed after its case ; and also *cum*, when joined to *me, te, se, quo, quí,* and *quibus* : as, *mecum, &c.* *Clam* sometimes governs the Accusative : as, *Clam patre, or patrem.*

Circiter, about ; *prope*, nigh ; *usque*, as far as ; *versus*, towards ; are Adverbs, and seem to govern the Accusative by means of *ad*, which is generally understood, but sometimes expressed. So likewise *procul*, far, which governs the Ablative by means of *a*.

Prepositions are often considered as Adverbs, when the word which they would govern is not expressed.

Prepositions in Composition.

Prepositions are often prefixed to other words, especially to Verbs, and modify the meaning of the Simple word, by their own.

Ad, *to* : as, *duco*, I lead ; *addūco*, I lead to ; *fero*, I bring ; *adfēro*, I bring to.

Per, *through, entirely* : as *perdūco*, I lead through ; *perfēro*, I carry through ; *facio*, I do ; *perficio*, I do entirely, I finish.

A, ab, abs, *from, or away* : as *abdūco*, I lead away ; *aufēro*, I carry away.

In, *in, into, upon, against* : as *infēro*, I bring in, or into ; *impōno*, I place upon ; *ruo*, I rush ; *irruo*, I rush upon, or against. It sometimes *increases* the meaning : as, *duro*, I harden ; *indūro*, I harden much.

The following syllables *am, di, or dis, re, se, con*, are called *Inseparable Prepositions*, because they are never found except in compound words.

Am-, signifies *about, around* : as, *ambio*, I go about, I surround. The *m* is changed into *n*, before *c, q, f, h* : as, *anceps*, that may be taken two ways, doubtful ; and *b* is inserted before a vowel : as, *ambio*.

Di-, or dis-, *asunder, separately* : as, *didūco*, I lead asunder, I separate. It sometimes reverses the meaning : as, *facilis*, easy ; *difficilis*,

difficult; *fido*, I trust; *diffīdo*, I distrust. It sometimes *increases* the meaning: as, *cupio*, I desire; *discupio*, I desire much. *Dis* is used before *c, f, j, p, q, s, t*; and *di* before the other consonants.

Re-, *back, again, against*: as, *redūco*, I lead back; *refēro*, I carry back; *relēgo*, I read again; *reclāmo*, I cry against. It sometimes *reverses* the meaning: as, *tendo*, I bend; *retendo*, I unbend. *D* is inserted before a vowel, and *h*: as, *redeo*, I return.

Se, apart, or aside: as, *sedūco*, I lead aside, or apart. With Adjectives, it denotes *privation*: as, *cura*, care; *secūrus*, free from care, careless.

Con-, (for *cum*), *together, along with*: as, *condūco*, I lead together, I bring along with me; *confēro*, I carry together. It sometimes *increases* the meaning: as, *premo*, I press; *comprīmo*, I press together, I press much. The *n* is dropt before a vowel, or *h*; and is changed into *m*, before *b, p, m*: as, *cogo* (*conāgo*), I drive together; *cohæres*, a coheir, an heir in participation.

Ne-, and *ve-*, are also prefixed to words, and have a *negative* signification: as, *fas*, justice; *nefas*, injustice, impiety; *scio*, I know; *nescio*, I know not, I am ignorant; *sanus*, healthy; *vesānus*, sickly.

INTERJECTION.

An Interjection is a word which expresses some passion or emotion of the mind: as, *oh, hei, heu, ah, alas!*

Nouns and Adjectives in the Neuter Gender are sometimes used as Interjections: as, *malum*, with a mischief! *infandum*, O shame! *misērum*, O wretched! *nefas*, O the villany!

CONJUNCTION.

A Conjunction is a word which connects sentences, or words: as, *et, ac, atque, que, and; etiam*, also; &c.

Some words, as, *deinde*, thereafter; *denīque*, finally; *cætērum*, moreover, but; *videlicet*, to wit; &c. may be considered either as Adverbs or Conjunctions.

Autem, enim, vero, quoque, quidem, are never put first in a clause or sentence. *Que, ve, and ne*, are always annexed to some other word.

SYNTAX.

Syntax is the correct arrangement of words in a sentence, and consists of *Concord* and *Government*.

Concord is when one word agrees with another in Gender, Number, Case, or Person.

Government is when one word requires another to be put in a certain Case or Mood.

General Principles.

1. In every sentence there must be a Verb and a Nominative expressed or understood.
2. Every Adjective must have a Substantive expressed or understood.
3. All the Cases of Nouns, except the Nominative and Vocative, must be governed by some other word.
4. The Genitive is governed by a Noun expressed or understood.
5. The Dative is governed by Adjectives and Verbs.
6. The Accusative is governed by an Active Verb, or by a Preposition, or is placed before the Infinitive.
7. The Vocative stands by itself, or has an Interjection joined with it.
8. The Ablative is governed by a Preposition expressed or understood.
9. The Infinitive is governed by a Verb or Adjective expressed or understood.

CONCORD.

RULE I.—An Adjective agrees with its Substantive in Gender, Number, and Case: as,

Vir bonus, a good man.
Femina casta, a chaste woman.
Dulce pomum, a sweet apple.

Note 1.—The Substantive *negotium* is often understood to an Adjective in the Neuter Gender: as, *triste*, supply *negotium*.

Note 2.—The Infinitive sometimes supplies the place of a Substantive: as, *Scire tuum*. PERS.

RULE II.—A Verb agrees with its Nominative in Number and Person: as,

Ego lego, I read.
Tu scribis, you write.
Præceptor docet, the master teaches.

Note 1.—The Nominative of the Pronouns is expressed only when some particular distinction of the Person is necessary.

Note 2.—An Infinitive, or part of a sentence, often supplies the place of a Nominative of the Third Person: as, *Mentiri est turpe*; *Vacare culpâ est magnum solatium*.

Note 3.—A Collective Noun, though Singular, may be joined with a Verb in the Plural: as, *Multitudo convenerant*.

RULE III.—Substantive Verbs, Passive Verbs of Naming, and Verbs of Gesture, have a Nominative both before and after them, belonging to the same thing: as,

Ego sum discipulus, I am a scholar.

Tu vocāris Joannes, you are named John.

Illa incēdit regīna, she walks as a queen.

Or—Any Verb may have the same Case after it as before it, when both words refer to the same thing.

Note.—When a Verb comes between two Nominatives of different numbers, it generally agrees with the first: as, *Ossa fiunt lapis*. Ov.

RULE IV.—The Infinitive Mood has an Accusative before it: as,

Gaudeo te valēre, I am glad that you are well.

Note.—The Accusative of the Pronouns is often understood; and *esse*, or *fuisse*, is frequently omitted after Participles.

RULE V.—*Esse* has the same Case after it that it has before it: as,

Petrus cupit esse vir doctus, Peter desires to be a learned man.

Scio Petrum esse virum doctum, I know that Peter is a learned man.

Or—The Infinitive of a Substantive Verb, of a Passive Verb of Naming, and of a Verb of Gesture, takes the same Case after it that it has before it.

Note.—When the Dative precedes the Infinitive, the Noun which follows is sometimes put in the Accusative: as, *Licet omnibus esse bonos*; sup. *eos*.

RULE VI.—The Relative *Qui, quæ, quod*, agrees with its Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person: as,

Vir sapit qui pauca loquitur, the man is wise who speaks little.

Ego qui scribo, I who write.

Note 1.—The Antecedent is the Noun going before the Relative and to which it refers. The Relative is properly an Adjective, and agrees with the Antecedent, which is again understood to it: as, *Vir sapit qui (vir) pauca loquitur*, the man is wise which (man), &c.

Note 2.—Part of a sentence sometimes forms the Antecedent, in which case the Relative must be in the Neuter Gender: as, *In tempore veni quod rerum omnium est primum*. TER.

RULE VII.—If no Nominative come between the Rela-

tive and the Verb, the Relative shall be the Nominative to the Verb: as,

Præceptor qui docet, the master who teaches.

RULE VIII.—If a Nominative come between the Relative and the Verb, the Relative is governed by the Verb, Noun, or Adjective following, or by the Preposition which goes before it: as,

Deus quem colimus, God whom we worship.

Cujus munere vivimus, by whose gift we live.

Note.—Words of relative quantity and quality, as, *qualis, quantus, quotus*, are often construed as the Relative: thus, *Tanta multitudo quantam capit urbs nostra.* CIC.

RULE IX.—Two or more Substantives Singular, connected by the Conjunctions, *et, ac, atque, &c.* generally have a Verb, Adjective, or Relative Plural: as,

Petrus et Joannes qui sunt docti, Peter and John who are learned.

Note 1.—A Conjunction is not always necessary: as, *Dum actus, mectus, magister prohibebant.* TER.

Note 2.—If the Substantives be of different Genders, and signify Persons, the Adjective is Masculine, agreeing with *homines*, understood. But, if the Substantives signify things without life, the Adjective is Neuter, agreeing with *negotia*, understood.

Note 3.—When the Nominatives are of different Persons, the Verb agrees with the First rather than the Second, and with the Second rather than the Third: as, *Si tu et Tullia valetis, ego et Cicero valemus.* CIC.

RULE X.—Substantives signifying the same thing agree in Case: as,

Cicero orator, Cicero the orator.

Urbs Edinburgum, the city Edinburgh.

Note.—A sentence, or clause, may supply the place of one of the Substantives: as, *Cogitet oratorem institui, rem arduam.* QUINT.

GOVERNMENT.

Government of Substantives.

RULE XI.—One Substantive governs another, signifying a different thing, in the Genitive: as,

Amor Dei, the love of God.

Lex naturæ, the law of nature.

Note 1.—The Genitive is sometimes changed into the Dative : as, *Urbi pater est, urbique maritus.* LUC.

Note 2.—The governing Substantive is sometimes understood : as, *Ubi ad Dianæ veneris.* TER. Sup. *templum, or ædem.*

RULE XII.—If the latter of two Substantives have an Adjective signifying Praise, Dispraise, or any sort of Distinction, joined with it, it may be put in the Genitive or Ablative : as,

Vir summæ prudentiæ, or summâ prudentiâ, a man of great wisdom.

Puer probæ indôlis, or probâ indôle, a boy of a good disposition.

Note.—The latter Substantive must denote a part or property of the former, otherwise it does not belong to this Rule.

RULE XIII.—An Adjective in the Neuter Gender, without a Substantive, governs the Genitive : as,

Multum pecuniæ, much money.
Quid rei est ? what is the matter ?

Note 1.—The Adjectives which govern the Genitive like Substantives generally signify quantity : as, *multum, plus, tantum, &c.* To these add the Pronouns, *id, hoc, quid,* and its compounds. *Quid* and *plus* always govern the Genitive. *Quod* and its compounds agree in Case with their Substantives.

Note 2.—Plural Adjectives in the Neuter Gender also govern the Genitive : as, *Angusta viarum.* VIRG.

* **RULE XIII.**—*Opus* and *Usus,* signifying *need,* govern the Ablative of the thing wanted : as,

Auctoritatē tuâ nobis opus est, we have need of your authority.
Nunc viribus usus (est vobis), now you have need of strength.

Note.—*Opus* and *usus* sometimes govern the Genitive : as, *Lectio- nis opus est.* QUINT.

Government of Adjectives.

RULE XIV.—Verbal Adjectives, or such as signify an Affection of the Mind, govern the Genitive : as,

Avidus gloriæ, desirous of glory.
Ignârus fraudis, ignorant of fraud.
Memor beneficiörum, mindful of favours.

To this Rule belong Verbal Adjectives in *ax, ns,* and *tus* ; Adjectives denoting Affection ; as, *Desire* and *Disdain* ; *Knowledge* and *Innocence* ; *Innocence* and *Guilt.*

RULE XV.—Partitives, and words placed Partitively, Comparatives, Superlatives, Interrogatives, and some Numerals, govern the Genitive Plural: as,

Aliquis philosophorum, some one of the philosophers.

Senior fratrum, the elder of the brothers.

Quis nostrum, which of us.

A *Partitive* is a word which signifies a part of any number of persons or things, in contradistinction to the whole.

Note 1.—Partitives, &c. agree in Gender with the Substantives which they govern: as, *Nulla sororum*. But if there be two Substantives of different Genders, the Partitives, &c. generally agree with the former: as, *Indus fluminum maximus*. CIC.

Note 2.—Partitives, &c. govern the Genitive Singular of Collective Nouns: as, *Præstantissimus nostræ civitatis*. CIC. Sup. *vir*.

RULE XVI.—Adjectives signifying Profit or Disprofit, Likeness or Unlikeness, govern the Dative: as,

Utilis bello, profitable for war.

Similis patri, like his father.

Or—Any Adjective may govern the Dative in Latin, which has *to* or *for* after it in English.

To this Rule also belong Adjectives signifying Pleasure or Pain; Friendship or Hatred; Clearness or Obscurity; Nearness; Ease or Difficulty; Equality or Inequality; and several compounded with *con*: as, *cognatus*, &c.

Note 1.—Some of these Adjectives govern also the Genitive: as, *amicus*, *inimicus*, *socius*, *vicinus*, *par*, *æquālis*, *similis*, *commūnis*, *proprius*, &c.

Note 2.—Adjectives signifying *Motion* or *Tendency* to a thing, take after them the Accusative with *ad*, rather than the Dative: as, *proclivus*, *pronus*, *propensus*, *velox*, *celer*, *tardus*, *piger*, &c.: as, *Piger ad pœnas*. OV.

Note 3.—Adjectives signifying *Usefulness*, *Fitness*, and the contrary, often take the Accusative with *ad*: as, *Utilis ad nullam rem*. CIC.

Note 4.—*Propior* and *proximus* take after them the Dative, or the Accusative governed by *ad* understood: as, *Propius vero*. LIV. *Proximus Pompeium*. CIC. Sup. *ad*.

RULE XVII.—Verbal Adjectives in *bilis* and *dus* govern the Dative: as,

Amandus, or *amabilis omnibus*, to be beloved by all men.

RULE XVIII.—Nouns denoting Measure are put in the Accusative: as,

Columna sexaginta pedes alta, a pillar sixty feet high.

Note 1.—The names of *Measure* are *digitus, palmus, pes, cubitus, ulna, passus, stadium.*

Note 2.—The word denoting *Measure* is sometimes put in the Ablative: as, *Fossam sex cubitis altam.* LIV. The *difference* of *Measure* is always put in the Ablative: as, *Turris est sex pedibus altior quam murus.* To which may be referred, *tanto, quanto, hoc, eo, quo, multo, paulo, &c.*

RULE XIX.—The Comparative Degree governs the Ablative of the Object with which any thing is compared: as,

Dulcior melle, sweeter than honey.
Præstantior auro, better than gold.

Note.—When the Comparative is followed by *quam*, the objects compared are put in the same Case: as, *Dulcior quam mel; Præstantior quam aurum.* The Nominative and Accusative only can be repeated after *quam*; and if any other case precede the Comparative, the Verb *sum*, with the Nominative, are used: as, *Loquor de viro sapientiore quam tu es.*

RULE XX.—*Dignus, indignus, contentus, præditus, captus,* and *fretus*; also *natus, satus, ortus, editus,* and the like, govern the Ablative: as,

Dignus honore, worthy of honour.
Præditus virtute, endued with virtue.
Contentus parvo, content with little.

Note.—*Dignus, indignus,* and *contentus,* are sometimes construed with the Genitive: as, *Indignus avorum.* VIRG.

RULE XXI.—Adjectives of Plenty or Want govern the Genitive, or Ablative: as,

Plenus iræ, or *irâ,* full of anger.
Inops rationis, or *ratione,* void of reason.

Note.—Some adjectives of *Plenty* or *Want* govern the Genitive only: as, *benignus, exsors, impos, impotens, liberalis, &c.* Some the Ablative only: as, *beatus, distentus, tumidus, turgidus, &c.* Some the Genitive and Ablative: as, *compos, experts, gravis, dives, &c.*

Government of Verbs.

RULE XXII.—*Sum*, when it signifies Possession, Property, or Duty, governs the Genitive: as,

Est regis punire rebelles, it belongs to the king to punish rebels.
Militum est suo duci parere, it is the duty of soldiers to obey their general.

Note.—The Genitive is not properly governed by *sum*, but by such words as *officium*, *munus*, *opus*, *negotium*, *res*, *proprium*, &c. understood.

RULE XXIII.—These Nominatives, *meum*, *tuum*, *suum*, *nostrum*, *vestrum*, are excepted: as,

Tuum est id procurāre, it is your duty to manage that.

Note.—That is, instead of the Genitives of the Substantive Pronouns, *ego*, *tu*, *sui*, the Nominative Neuter of the Possessives is used, agreeing with *officium*, *munus*, &c.

RULE XXIV.—*Misereor*, *miseresco*, and *satāgo*, govern the Genitive: as,

Miserere civium tuorum, take pity on your countrymen.

Satāgit rerum suarum, he is busy with his own affairs.

Note.—Many other Verbs, signifying some affection of the mind, likewise govern the Genitive: as, *ango*, *decipior*, *fallo*, *invideo*, *lætor*, *miror*, *studeo*, *pendeo*, *vercor*, &c.

RULE XXV.—*Est* taken for *habeo* (to have) governs the Dative of a Person: as,

Est mihi liber, I have a book.

Sunt mihi libri, I have books.

Note.—*Foret* and *suppetit* are construed in the same way: as, *Si mihi cauda foret*. MART. *Cui rerum suppetit usus*. HOR.

RULE XXVI.—*Sum* taken for *affero* (to bring) governs two Datives, the one of a Person, and the other of a Thing: as,

Est mihi voluptāti, it is (or it brings) a pleasure to me.

Note 1.—Some other Verbs, as, *forem*, *do*, *duco*, *verto*, *tribuo*, *habeo*, *relinquo*, &c. also govern two Datives.

Note 2.—To this Rule may be referred the form of naming, *Est mihi nomen Joanni*; in which the Dative is more elegant than the Nominative or Genitive.

RULE XXVII.—Verbs signifying Advantage or Disadvantage govern the Dative: as,

Fortūna favet fortibus, fortune favours the brave.

Nemini noceas, do hurt to no man.

Or—Any Verb may govern the Dative in Latin, which has *to* or *for* after it in English.

The Verbs which more particularly belong to this Rule, are,

Verbs signifying,

1. To Profit and Hurt: as, *commōdo*, *placeo*, *noceo*, &c. But *lædo* and *offendo* govern the Accusative.

2. To Favour or Help, and the contrary : as, *faueo, auxilior, inuideo, &c.* But *iuuo* governs the Accusative.

3. To Command, Obey, Serve, and Resist : as, *imp̄ero, pareo, seruiō, resisto, &c.* But *jubeo* governs the Accusative.

4. To Threaten, or to be Angry with : as, *minor, indignor, irascor, &c.*

5. To Trust : as, *fido, confido, credo* : also, *diff̄ido, desp̄ero.*

6. Verbs compounded with *satis, bene,* and *male* : as, *satisfacio, benefacio, maledico, &c.*

7. *Sum*, and its compounds, except *possum* : as, *adsum, &c.*

8. Many verbs compounded with these ten *Prepositions* ; *ad, ante, cum, in, inter, ob, post, pr̄æ, sub,* and *super* : as, *adsto, antecello, consto, &c.*

RULE XXVIII.—Verbs signifying Actively govern the Accusative : as,

Ama Deum, love God.

Rever̄ere parentes, reverence your parents.

Note 1.—An Infinitive, or part of a Sentence, sometimes supplies the place of an Accusative : as, *P̄nitere tant̄i non emo.* GELL.

Note 2.—Neuter Verbs govern an Accusative of their own, or a similar signification : as, *Vivere vitam.* PLAUT.

RULE XXIX.—*Recordor, mem̄ini, reminiscor,* and *obliscor,* govern the Accusative, or Genitive : as,

Recordor lectiōnis, or *lectiōnem,* I remember my lesson.

Obliscor injuriæ, or *injuriam,* I forget an injury.

Note.—*Mem̄ini*, when it signifies *to make mention*, is joined with the Genitive, or the Ablative with the Preposition *de* : as, *Mem̄ini alicujus,* or *de aliquo.*

RULE XXX.—Verbs of Accusing, Condemning, Acquitting, and Admonishing, govern the Accusative of a Person, with the Genitive of the Crime, or Thing : as,

Arguit me furti, he accuses me of theft.

Monet me officii, he puts me in mind of my duty.

Note 1.—The *Crime* is often put in the Ablative, with or without a Preposition : as, *Accusare de negligentia.* CIC. *Suspicionē absolvent.* LIV.

Note 2.—Verbs of *Accusing* and *Admonishing* sometimes govern two Accusatives, the latter of which is generally a Pronoun, or a word referring to number or quantity : as, *hoc, id, unum, multa, &c.*

RULE XXXI.—Verbs of Comparing, Giving, Declaring, and Taking away, govern the Accusative and Dative : as,

Comp̄aro Virgiliū Hom̄ero, I compare Virgil to Homer.

Eripuit me morti, he rescued me from death.

Or—Any Active Verb may govern the Accusative and the Dative, when the Object of the action, and the Person or Thing upon which the action is exerted, are expressed.

Note.—Verbs of *Comparing* and *Taking away*, instead of the Dative, have often the Ablative after them, with a Preposition: as, *Composuit dicta cum factis*.

RULE XXXII.—Verbs of Asking and Teaching govern two Accusatives, the first of a Person, and the second of a Thing: as,

Posce Deum veniam, beg pardon of God.

Docuit me grammaticam, he taught me grammar.

Celo (I conceal) also governs two Accusatives: as, *Celo te hanc rem*. TER.

Note 1.—Verbs which, in the Passive Voice, take a Nominative both before and after them, govern, in the Active, two Accusatives referring to the same thing.

Note 2.—These Verbs are often construed with a Preposition.

Note 3.—*Doceo*, *edoceo*, *dedoceo*, and *erudio*, are the only Verbs of *Teaching* which govern two Accusatives. The others, as, *addoceo*, *instruo*, &c. take an Ablative, sometimes with *in*.

* **RULE XXXII.**—Verbs of Filling, Loading, Binding, Depriving, Clothing, and some others, govern the Accusative and Ablative: as,

Implet patēram mero, he fills the bowl with wine.

Onērat navem auro, he loads the ship with gold.

Note 1.—*Compleo*, *impleo*, and *expleo*, sometimes govern the Genitive: as, *Animum explēsse juvabit ultricis flammæ*. VIRG.

Note 2.—The Ablative is governed by Prepositions, which are sometimes expressed: as, *Solvere aliquem ex catenis*. CIC.

RULE XXXIII.—The Passives of such Active Verbs as govern two Cases retain the latter case: as,

Accūsor furti, I am accused of theft.

Doceor grammaticam, I am taught grammar.

Patēra implētur mero, the bowl is filled with wine.

Note.—Passive Verbs of *Clothing*, such as, *Induor*, *amicior*, *cingor*, *accingor*, also *exuor*, *discingor*, and their Participles, are often, by the Poets, joined to the Accusative: as, *Protinus induitur faciem cultumque Dianæ*. OVID. With the Prose-writers, they govern the Ablative: as, *Hispano cingitur gladio*. LIV.

RULE XXXIV.—Nouns denoting Price are put in the Ablative: as,

Emi librum duobus assibus, I bought a book for two shillings.

Vendidit hic auro patriam, this man sold his country for gold.

Note.—The Ablative is often governed by the Preposition *pro* ; as, *Dum pro argenteis decem aurcus unus valeret.* LIV.

RULE XXXV.—These Genitives, *tanti, quanti, pluris, minōris*, are excepted : as,

Quanti constitit ? how much cost it ?

Asse et pluris, a shilling and more.

Note.—When the Substantive is expressed, these words are put in the Ablative : as, *Tanto pretio mercatus est.* CIC.

RULE XXXVI.—Verbs of Valuing govern the Accusative with such Genitives as these : *magni, parvi, nihili, &c.* : as,

Æstimo te magni, I value you much.

Note 1.—*Æstimo* sometimes governs the Ablative : as, *Æstimo te magno.*

Note 2.—*Æqui* and *boni* are put in the Genitive after *facio* and *consulo* : as, *Hoc consulo boni, æqui bonique facio.*

RULE XXXVII.—Verbs of Plenty and Scarceness generally govern the Ablative : as,

Abundat divitiis, he abounds in riches.

Caret omni culpâ, he is free from every fault.

Note.—*Egeo* and *indigeo* frequently govern the Genitive : as, *Eget æris.* HOR.

RULE XXXVIII.—*Utor, abutor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor*, govern the Ablative : as,

Utitur fraude, he uses deceit.

Abutitur libris, he abuses books.

Note 1.—To these Verbs add, *nitor, gaudeo, muto, dono, munero, communico, victito, beo, fido, impertior, dignor, nascor, creor, afficio, consto, laboro* (I am ill,) *prosequor, &c.* ; but the Ablative, after most of these, may be referred to Rule LV.

Note 2.—*Potior, fungor, vescor, epulor*, and *pascor*, sometimes govern the Accusative : as, *Potiri summam imperii.* NEP. *Potior* sometimes governs the Genitive : as, *Potiri regni.* CIC.

Government of Impersonal Verbs.

RULE XXXIX.—Impersonal Verbs govern the Dative : as,

Expedit reipublicæ, it is profitable for the state.

Licet nemini peccare, no man is allowed to sin.

Note 1.—Besides the Dative, Impersonal Verbs have commonly an Infinitive, or part of a sentence, joined to them, which is supposed to

supply the place of a Nominative: as, *Cui peccare licet*. OVID. These Nominatives, *hoc, illud, id, idem, quod, &c.* are sometimes joined to Impersonal Verbs: as, *Six tibi id minus libebit*. CIC.

Note 2.—The Verbs, *potest, cœpit, incipit, desinit, debet, and solet*, become Impersonal, when joined to Impersonal Verbs: as, *Non potest credi tibi*.

RULE XL.—*Refert* and *interest* govern the Genitive: as,

Refert patris, it concerns my father.

Intērest omnium, it is the interest of all.

Note.—*Refert* and *interest* sometimes admit Nominatives: as, *Magni refert studium atque voluntas*.—LUCR.

RULE XLI.—*Mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra*, are put in the Accusative Plural: as,

Non mea refert, it does not concern me.

Note 1.—That is, *mea, tua, &c.* are put in the Acc. Plural, when joined to *refert* and *interest*, instead of the Genitives of the Substantive Pronouns.

Note 2.—*Cuja*, and *cujus interest*, are used indifferently.

RULE XLII.—*Misēret, pœnitēt, pudet, tædet, and piget*, govern the Accusative of a Person, with the Genitive: as,

Misēret me tui, I pity you.

Pœnitēt me peccāti, I repent of my sin.

Note 1.—The Infinitive, or part of a sentence, sometimes supplies the place of the Genitive: as, *Te id puduit facere*. TER.

RULE XLIII.—*Decet, delectat, juvat, and oportet*, govern the Accusative of a Person, with the Infinitive: as,

Delectat me studēre, it delights me to study.

Non decet te rixāri, it does not become you to scold.

Note 1.—*Decet* sometimes governs the Dative: as, *Ita nobis decet*. TER.

Note 2.—*Attinet, perfinet, and spectat*, when used *impersonally*, take the Accusative with *ad*: as, *Nihil ad me attinet*. TER.

* RULE XLIII.—The principal Agent, after a Passive Verb, is put in the Ablative, with the Preposition *a* or *ab*; and sometimes in the Dative: as,

Mundus gubernātur a Deo, the world is governed by God.

Neque cernitur ulli, nor is he seen by any.

Note 1.—The Dative of the Agent is used chiefly by the Poets.

Note 2.—The secondary Agent is governed in the Accusative by the Preposition *per*; or is expressed in the Ablative without a Preposition: as, *Per me defēsa est respublica*. CIC.

Government of the Infinitive, Participles, Gerunds, and Supines.

RULE XLIV.—One Verb governs another in the Infinitive: as,

Cupio discere, I desire to learn.

Note 1.—The Infinitive is sometimes governed by Adjectives: as, *Dignus amari*. VIRG.—and sometimes also by Substantives: as, *Tempus equum fumantia solvere colla*. VIRG:

Note 2.—The Infinitive is used as a Neuter Noun, in all the Cases of the Singular Number. It is governed by Nouns, Adjectives, Verbs, and Prepositions; and Adjectives and Pronouns agree with it in Gender. It is sometimes also used as a participle: as, *Quin te conspicer fodere, aut arare, aut aliquid ferre denique*. TER.

Note 3.—*Cæpit*, *cæpērunt*, or some other governing word, is frequently understood: as, *Omnes mihi invidere*, TER. sup. *cæperunt*.

RULE XLV.—Participles, Gerunds, and Supines, govern the Case of their Verbs: as,

Amans virtutem, loving virtue. By Rule XXVIII.

Carens fraude, wanting guile. By Rule XXXVII.

Note 1.—The latter Supine does not govern a Case.

Note 2.—Verbal Nouns and Adjectives sometimes govern the Case of the Verbs from which they are derived: as, *Justitia est obtemperatio legibus*. CIC. *Facta consultaque ejus æmulus erat*. SALL.

Note 3.—*Exosus*, *perosus*, and often, also, *pertæsus*, govern the Accusative: as, *Tædas exosa jugales*. OVID.

RULE XLVI.—The Gerund in *dum* of the Nominative Case with the Verb *est* governs the Dative: as,

Vivendum est mihi recte, I must live well.

Moriendum est omnibus, all must die.

Note 1.—Gerunds are construed like Nouns of the same case.

Note 2.—This Gerund always denotes *Obligation*, or *Necessity*, and governs the Dative of the object with which the obligation, or necessity lies.

Note 3.—The Dative is frequently understood: as, *Eundum est sup. nobis*.

RULE XLVII.—The Gerund in *di* is governed by Substantives and Adjectives: as,

Tempus legendi, time of reading.

Cupidus discendi, desirous to learn.

See Rules XI. and XIV.

Note.—This Gerund is sometimes construed with the Genitive Plural: as, *Facultas agrorum condonandi*, for agros. CIC.

RULE XLVIII.—The Gerund in *do* of the Dative Case is governed by Adjectives signifying Usefulness or Fitness: as,

Charta utilis scribendo, paper useful for writing.

See Rule XVI.

Note 1.—The Adjective is sometimes omitted: as, *Non est solvendo*, sup. *par*, or *habilis*.

Note 2.—This Gerund is sometimes governed by a Verb: as, *Epidicum quærendo operam dabo*. **PLAUT.** See Rule XXXI.

RULE XLIX.—The Gerund in *dum* of the Accusative Case is governed by the Preposition *ad*, or *inter*: as,

Promptus ad audiendum, ready to hear.

Attentus inter docendum, attentive in time of teaching.

See Rule LXVIII.

Note.—It is likewise sometimes governed by *ante*, *circa*, or *ob*: as, *Ante domandum*. **VIRG.**

RULE L.—The Gerund in *do* of the Ablative Case is governed by the Prepositions *a*, *ab*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, or *in*: as, *Pæna a peccando absterret*, punishment frightens from sinning.

See Rules LXIX. and LXXI.

RULE LI.—The Gerund in *do* of the Ablative Case is used without a Preposition, as the Ablative of Manner, or Cause: as,

Memoria excolendo augētur, the memory is improved by exercising it.

Defessus sum ambulando, I am wearied with walking.

See Rule LV.

RULE LII.—Gerunds governing the Accusative are varied by the Participles in *dus*, which agree with their Substantives in Gender, Number, and Case: as,

<i>Gerunds.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
<i>Petendum est pacem.</i>	<i>Petenda est pax.</i>
<i>Tempus petendi pacem.</i>	<i>Tempus petendæ pacis.</i>
<i>Ad petendum pacem.</i>	<i>Ad petendam pacem.</i>
<i>A petendo pacem.</i>	<i>A petenda pace.</i>

Note.—The Gerunds of Verbs which do not govern the Accusative are never changed into the Participles, except those of *utor*, *abūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, and *potior*: as, *Ad hæc utenda idonea est*. **TER.**

RULE LIII.—The Supine in *um* is put after a Verb of Motion: as,

Abiit deambulatum, he has gone to walk.

Note.—It is also put after Verbs which do not strictly denote motion: as, *Do filiam nuptum.* TER.

RULE LIV.—The Supine in *u* is put after an Adjective: as,

Facile dictu, easy to tell, or to be told.

I. THE CAUSE, MANNER, AND INSTRUMENT.

RULE LV.—The Cause, Manner, and Instrument, are put in the Ablative: as,

Palleo metu, I am pale for fear.

Fecit suo more, he did it after his own way.

Scribo calāmo, I write with a pen.

Note.—To this Rule are referred the Ablatives of the *Matter* of which any thing is made; and of the *Adjunct* or Noun expressive of some circumstance, joined to a Verb or Adjective: as, *Ære cavo clypeus.* VIRG. *Floruit acumine ingenii.* CIC.

II. PLACE.

RULE LVI.—*In* or *At* a place is put in the Genitive, if the Noun be of the First or Second Declension, and Singular Number: as,

Vixit Romæ, he lived at Rome.

Mortuus est Londini, he died at London.

Note.—*Humi*, *militiæ*, and *belli*, are also construed in the Genitive: as, *Humi nascentia fraga.* VIRG.

RULE LVII.—*In* or *At* a place is put in the Ablative, if the Noun be of the Third Declension, or of the Plural Number: as,

Habitat Carthagīne, he dwells at Carthage.

Studuit Parisiis, he studied at Paris.

RULE LVIII.—*To* a place is put in the Accusative: as,

Venit Romam, he came to Rome.

Profectus est Athēnas, he went to Athens.

RULE LIX.—*From* or *By* a place is put in the Ablative: as,

Discessit Corintho, he departed from Corinth.

Laodicēā iter faciēbat, he went by Laodicea.

Note.—Motion *by* or *through* a Town is generally expressed by the Preposition *per*: as, *Quum iter per Thebas faceret.* NEP.

RULE LX.—*Domus* and *Rus* are construed the same way as Names of Towns: as,

Manet domi, he stays at home.

Domum revertitur, he returns home.

Vivit rure, or *ruri*, he lives in the country.

Rediit rure, he has returned from the country.

Note.—*Domi* is used only when joined with the Adjectives, *meæ, tuæ, suæ, nostræ, vestræ, alienæ*. With other adjectives, *domo* is used for *domi*; as, *In domo paternâ*.

RULE LXI.—To names of Countries, Provinces, and all other places, except Towns, the Preposition is generally added: as,

Natus in Italiâ, in Latio, in urbe, &c. born in Italy, in Latium, in a city, &c.

Abiit in Italiam, in Latium, in urbem, &c. he has gone to Italy, to Latium, to a city, &c.

See Rules LXVIII, LXIX, LXX, and LXXI.

Note 1.—The Preposition is often expressed before names of Towns, especially when Appellatives or Adjectives are added to them: as, *in Epheso*, for *Ephesi*; *ad Capuam*, for *Capuam*; *ex Epheso*, for *Epheso*; *in Hispali oppido*. The Preposition is sometimes omitted after names of Countries, Provinces, &c.: as, *Inde Sardiniam cum classe venit*. CIC.

Note 2.—*Peto*, signifying *I make for, I go to*, always governs the Accusative, without a Preposition: as, *Ægyptum petere decrevit*. CURT.

RULE LXII.—Nouns denoting *Space*, or *Distance*, are put in the Accusative, and sometimes in the Ablative: as, *Urbs distat triginta millia, or millibus passuum*, the city is thirty miles distant.

Note 1.—One of the Substantives expressing *Distance*, is sometimes omitted: as, *Castra aberant bidui*, CIC. sup. *spatium*.

Note 2.—The *difference of Measure or Distance* is put in the Ablative: as, *Superat capite et cervicibus altis*. VIRG. See Rule XVIII.

III. TIME.

RULE LXIII.—Nouns denoting a *Point of Time* are put in the Ablative: as,

Venit horâ tertid, he came at the third hour.

RULE LXIV.—Nouns denoting *Continuance of Time* are put in the Accusative, or Ablative, but oftener in the Accusative: as,

Mansit paucos dies, he staid a few days.

Sex mensibus abfuit, he was absent six months.

RULE LXV.—A Substantive and a Participle, whose

Case depends upon no other word, are put in the Ablative Absolute: as,

Sole oriente, fugiunt tenebræ, the sun rising, or, when the sun rises, darkness flies away.

Opere peracto, ludemus, our work being finished, or, when our work is finished, we will play.

Note 1.—The Perfect Participles of *Deponent* Verbs are not used in the Ablative Absolute, but agree in Case with the Nominative to the Verb: as, *Cicero locutus hæc concedit*, and not *his locutis*. The Perfect Participles of *Common* Verbs are seldom used in a Passive sense, and therefore rarely occur in the Ablative Absolute.

Note 2.—Part of a sentence sometimes supplies the place of a Noun: as, *Exposito quid iniquitas loci posset*. CÆS.

Construction of Indeclinable Words.

I. ADVERBS.

RULE LXVI.—Adverbs are joined to Verbs, Adjectives, and other Adverbs: as,

Bene scribit, he writes well.

Fortiter pugnans, fighting bravely.

Satis bene, well enough.

Note.—Adverbs are sometimes, though seldom, joined to Nouns: as, *Homerus plane orator*. CIC.

RULE LXVI.*—Some Adverbs of Time, Place, and Quantity, govern the Genitive: as,

Pridie illius diei, the day before that day.

Ubique gentium, every where.

Satis est verbōrum, there is enough of words.

Note 1.—*Ergo* (for the sake of,) *instar*, and *partim*, also govern the Genitive: as, *Donari virtutis ergo*. CIC.

Note 2.—*Pridie* and *Postridie* govern the Genitive or Accusative: as, *Pridie Kalendas*, sup. ante; *Postridie Kalendas*, sup. post.

Note 3.—*En* and *Ecce* govern the Nominative or Accusative: as, *En causa*. CIC. *Ecce hominem*. CIC.

RULE LXVII.—Some Derivative Adverbs govern the Case of their Primitives: as,

Omnium elegantissime loquitur, he speaks the most elegantly of all. By Rule XV.

Vivere convenienter naturæ, to live agreeably to nature.

By Rule XVI.

II. PREPOSITIONS.

RULE LXVIII.—The Prepositions *ad*, *apud*, *ante*, &c. govern the Accusative: as,

Ad patrem, to the father.

RULE LXIX.—The Prepositions *a*, *ab*, *abs*, &c. govern the Ablative: as,

A patre, from the father.

Note.—*Tenus*, when subjoined to a Noun in the Plural Number, generally governs the Genitive: as, *Crurum tenus*. VIRG.

RULE LXX.—The Prepositions *in*, *sub*, *super*, and *subter*, govern the Accusative when *Motion* to a place is signified: as,

Eo in scholam, I go into the school.

Sub mœnia tendit, he goes under the walls.

Incidit super agmina, it fell upon the troops.

RULE LXXI.—When *Motion* or *Rest* *IN* a place is signified, *in* and *sub* govern the Ablative, *super* and *subter* either the Accusative or Ablative: as,

Sedeo, or *discurro in scholâ*, I sit, or run up and down, in the school.

Sedens super arma, sitting above the arms.

Subter littore, beneath the shore.

Note 1.—*In*, when used for *erga*, *contra*, *per*, *ad*, *usque ad*, *apud*, *super*, governs the Accusative: as, *Amor in patriam*. CIC. When used for *inter*, it generally governs the Ablative: as, *In bonis*. CIC.

Note 2.—*Sub*, when it refers to *time*, governs the Accusative: as, *Sub noctem*. CÆS.

Note 3.—*Super*, when used for *ultra*, *præter*, and *inter*, governs the Accusative; when used for *de*, *pro*, or *ab*, it governs the Ablative: as, *Super Garamantas*. VIRG. *Hac super re scribam*. CIC.

Note 4.—*Subter* rarely governs the Ablative, and only among the poets.

Note 5.—Prepositions are frequently omitted: as, *Devenire locos*. VIRG. sup. *ad*.

RULE LXXII.—A Preposition often governs the same Case in Composition that it does out of it: as,

Adeamus scholam, let us go to the school.

Exeamus scholâ, let us go out of the school.

Note.—This Rule takes place only when the Preposition may, without injuring the sense, be separated from the Verb, and placed before the Case by itself: as, *Alloquor patrem*, i. e. *loquor ad patrem*. And even then, the Preposition is frequently repeated: as, *Exire e finibus suis*. CÆS.

III. INTERJECTIONS.

RULE LXXIII.—The Interjections *O*, *heu*, and *proh*, govern the Vocative and sometimes the Accusative: as,

O formōse puer! O fair boy!
Heu me misērum! ah, wretch that I am!

Note 1.—These Interjections are sometimes joined to the Nominative: as, *O vir fortis.* TER.

Note 2.—*O* is often understood: as, *Tityre, coge pecus.* VIRG

RULE LXXIV.—*Hei* and *væ* govern the Dative: as,

Hei mihi! ah me!
Væ vobis! wo to you!

IV. CONJUNCTIONS.

RULE LXXV.—The Conjunctions *et*, *ac*, *atque*, *nec*, *neque*, *aut*, *vel*, and some others, connect like Cases and Moods: as,

Honōra patrem et matrem, honour your father and mother.
Nec scribit nec legit, he neither writes nor reads.

Note.—To these add *quam*, *nisi*, *præterquam*, *an*, &c. and Adverbs of Likeness: as, *ut*, *ceu*, *tanquam*, *quasi*, &c.

RULE LXXVI.—*Ut*, *quo*, *licet*, *ne*, *utinam*, and *dummodo*, are generally joined to the Subjunctive Mood: as, *Accidit ut terga vertērent*, it happened that they turned their backs.

Utinam sapēres, I wish you were wise.

Note 1.—All *Indefinite* words require the Subjunctive: as, *Quis est?* *Nescio quis sit.* *Nescit vitāne fruatur,* *An sit apud manes.* OVID. *Nescio ubi sit.*

Note 2.—*Ut* is omitted after *volo*, *nolo*, *malo*, *rogo*, *precor*, &c. and after the Imperatives *sine*, *cave*, and *fac*: as, *Ducas volo.* TER. *Fac cogites.*

• *Additional Rules for the Construction of Qui and Quum.*

In the application of the following Rules, it is necessary to distinguish between the Subjunctive and Potential Mood. When the meaning is contingent, the Potential Mood must be employed; and, in all such examples, it deserves particular attention, that the form of

• For these Rules and Observations the Editor is indebted to Dr CROMBIE's *Gymnasium*, 4th Edit.

the Verb is not affected by the relative, or any antecedent participle, but is strictly potential, the sense itself requiring that form. Thus, if we say, "I read, that I may learn," *Lego ut discam*—"He sent men, who might tell the king," *Misit homines, qui regi nunciarent*—the two Verbs, *Discam* and *Nunciarent*, are not each *subjoined* to any preceding word, as its regimen; but are to be considered as in the Potential Mood, the sentiment to be expressed clearly demanding that form of the Verb. But, when this form is used, not because the sentiment requires it, as being contingent or conditional, but because the Verb is *subjoined* to some Adverb, Conjunction, or indefinite term, which requires that form, it is then properly the Subjunctive Mood. If I say, "He was so cruel a tyrant, that all men feared him," *Tyrannus tam crudelis erat, ut omnes eum metuerent*—"You err, who think," *Erras, qui censeas*—the Verbs *Metuerent* and *Censeas* must be considered as Subjunctive; for, were they not subjoined to *Ut* and *Qui*, they would be put in the Indicative form, the sense being assertive and unconditional.

RULE I.—*Qui* is uniformly joined to the Subjunctive Mood when the relative clause does not express any sentiment of the author's, but refers it to the person or persons of whom he is speaking: as,

Socrates dicere solebat, omnes in eo, *quod scirent*, satis esse eloquentes. **CIC.**

Obs. 1.—Or, *Qui* is joined to the Subjunctive Mood when the discourse is *oblique* or *indirect*. In oblique narration, the only Moods admissible are, the *Infinitive* and *Subjunctive*: and, as the relative is never employed except in the secondary and subordinate members of a sentence, it must always, in oblique statements, be followed by the *Subjunctive*.

Obs. 2.—In the same manner *Ubi* for *in quo loco*, *Quo* for *ad quem locum*, and *Unde* for *e quo loco*, taken relatively, and not expressing an observation of the author's, or an object of his knowledge, govern the Subjunctive Mood: as, *Cognovit, non longe ex eo loco oppidum Cassivellauni abesse, quo satis magnus hominum pecorisque numerus convenerit*. **CÆS.**

Obs. 3.—The same principle extends also to the Conjunctions *quia*, *quam*, *quum*, *quod*, *quando*, *atque*, and other such relative words: as, *Eos inter se, quia nemo unus satis dignus regno visus sit, partes regni rapuisse*. **LIV.**

RULE II.—*Qui* is joined to the Subjunctive Mood, when the relative clause expresses the motive, reason, or cause of the action or event: as,

Male fecit Hannibal, *qui Capuæ hiemavit*, Hannibal did wrong in wintering, or because he wintered, at Capua.

RULE III.—*Qui* is joined to the Subjunctive Mood, when it is equivalent to *quanquam*, or *etsi is, si, modo, or dummodo is*: as,

Scilicet etiam illum, *qui libertatem publicam nollit*, tam projecta servientium patentiæ tædebat. TAC.

RULE IV.—*Qui* is joined to the Subjunctive Mood when it follows an Interrogative, Negative, or Indefinite word: as,

Quis est enim, cui non perspicua sint illa? CIC.

Obs. 1.—This rule takes effect only when the antecedent and relative clauses refer to the same subject, and logically express but one subject and one attribute.

Obs. 2.—The following are the most common forms of expression referred to in this Rule: *Quis est? Quantus est? Ecquis est? An quisquam est? Quotusquisque est?* &c. *Nemo est, Nullus est, Nihil est, Non quisquam est, Nego esse quenquam, Vix ullus est,* &c.

Obs. 3.—This rule is applicable to those cases only in which the interrogation is equivalent to an affirmation or negation. When the sentence implies a question, put for the sake of information, the relative takes the Indicative Mood: as, *Quis hic est, qui operto capite Æsculapium salutat?* PLAUT. *Quis est, qui salutet?* would signify, “Who is there that salutes?” implying “Nobody salutes.”

RULE V.—*Qui* is very generally joined to the Subjunctive Mood, when a periphrasis with the Verb *Sum* is employed, instead of simply the Nominative with the principal Verb: as,

Sunt, qui dicant, “There are persons, who say,” instead of *Nonnulli dicunt*, “Some say.”

Obs. 1.—This Rule, like the preceding, takes effect only when the relative clause forms the predicate of the sentence.

Obs. 2.—The periphrastic form of expression is employed with other Verbs besides *Sum*: as, *Reperio, invenio, existo, exorior*: also, *tempus fuit, tempus veniet*, &c. *adest, præsto sunt*, &c.

RULE VI.—*Qui* is joined to the Subjunctive Mood, when it is used for *ut ego, ut tu, ut ille, ut nos, ut vos, ut illi*, through all their cases: as,

At ea fuit legatio Octavii, in quâ periculi suspicio non subesset. CIC.

RULE VII.—*Qui* is joined to the Subjunctive Mood after *Solus* and *Unus*, when they are employed to restrict to a single person the qualities implied in the relative clause: as,

Solus hic homo est, qui sciat divinitus. PLAUT.

Quum—a Conjunction.

RULE I.—*Quum* taken for *quoniam*, or *quandoquidem*, “since,” is very generally joined to the Subjunctive Mood: as, “*Quum Athenas sis profectus.*” CIC.

RULE II.—*Quum* taken for *quod*, “because,” is generally joined to the Indicative Mood: as, *Ego redigam vos in gratiam hoc fretus, quum e medio excessit.* TZR.

RULE III.—*Quum* taken for *etsi*, “although,” is uniformly joined to the Subjunctive Mood: as, *Cui quum Cato et Caninius intercessissent, tamen est perscripta.* CIC.

Quum—an Adverb.

RULE I.—*Quum* taken for *quoties*, or *quandocunque*, “as often as,” or “whenever,” is joined to the Indicative Mood: as, *Quum prospero ejus flatu utimur, ad exitus pervehimur optatos, et quum re-flavit, affligimur.* CIC.

RULE II.—*Quum* taken for *quando*, “at the time when,” or “at which time,” is joined to the Indicative Mood: as, *Ne stridorem quidem serræ tunc audiunt, quum acuitur; aut grunnitum quum jugulatur sus.* CIC.

RULE III.—*Quum* is joined to the Indicative Mood, when it is used to express the point of time at which an action or state commenced, conceived to be continued to the present period: as, *Jam anni prope quadraginta sunt, quum hoc probatur.* CIC.

RULE IV.—*Quum* is joined to the Indicative Mood when it signifies “as soon as,” and is emphatically used with *primum*, denoting an action or event in close succession to another: as, *Quum ad nos allatum est de temeritate eorum, graviter commotus sum.* CIC. *Quum primum Romam veni.* CIC.

RULE V.—*Quum* is joined to the Subjunctive Mood, when it is taken for *postquam*, “after,” denoting simply the posteriority of one event to another, but not implying close succession: as, *Hæc quum animadvertisset, vehementer eos incusavit.* CÆS.

RULE VI.—*Quum*, when joined to a secondary clause, expressing a past action or event as in progression, to which another action or event, in the primary clause, is expressed as contemporary, is joined to the Subjunctive Mood: as, *Quum civitas armis jus suum exsequi conaretur, Orgetorix mortuus est.* CÆS.

Obs.—It is necessary to observe, that the preceding rules for joining *Quum* with the Indicative Mood, do not take place in the two following cases: 1st, If the clause be oblique—we say, for example, “*Tempus fuit, quum homines vagabantur,*” CIC. but, “*Scio tempus fuisse, quum homines vagarentur.*” 2dly, When any thing doubtful, contingent, or fortuitous, is implied, the sense requires the Potential Mood: as, “*Sed tu omnia consilia differebas in id tempus, quum sciremus.*” CIC. “When we should know.” It must be observed also, that though usage be very generally conformable to these rules, it is not universally so. Cicero says, “*Tempus fuit, quum homines vagabantur.*” Varro, in a sentiment precisely similar, says, “*Tempus fuit, quum homines rura colerent.*”

APPENDIX.

FIRST DECLENSION.

1. IN the declension of the word *familia*, when compounded with *pater*, *mater*, *filius*, and *filia*, an old form of the Genitive Singular in *as* has been retained: as, *pater-familias*, *patres-familias*. The regular forms *familiæ* and *familiarum* are, however, not uncommon.

There is also a poetical form of the Genitive Singular in *ai*, for *æ*: as, *aulai*, *aurai*.

2. Patronymics in *es* and *a*, compound words ending in *cōla* and *gēna*, and a few national names, sometimes form the Genitive Plural, in the poets, in *ûm* instead of *arum*: as, *Æneadûm*, *Cœlicolûm*, *Lapithûm*. This contraction is very unusual in prose.

SECOND DECLENSION.

3. The Genitive Singular of Nouns in *ius* and *ium*, in the purest age of the Latin language, was formed in *i*, and not in *ii*, both in prose and verse: as, *fili*, *Tulli*, *ingeni*.

4. Proper names in *ius* which continue Adjectives, and *Pius* when used as a surname, form the Vocative Singular in *e*: as, *Delie*, *Pie*.

5. Some Nouns, especially those which denote value, measure, and weight, commonly form the Genitive Plural in *ûm*, instead of *orum*: as, *nummûm*, *sestertiûm*. Neuter Nouns have sometimes *ôn* instead of *orum*.

THIRD DECLENSION.

Genitive Singular.

6. Cicero and other writers of the best age sometimes form, from Greek proper names in *es*, especially from those in *cles*, a Genitive in *i* instead of *is*: as, *Achilli*, *Agathocli*. In Nouns in *is*, *idis*, the poets often use the Greek termination *os* for *is*: as, *Daphnis*, *Daphnidos*. The Greek form is not common in prose. Feminines in *o* have commonly *us*: as, *Dido*, *Didus*.

Accusative Singular.

7. The following Nouns in *is* have *im* in the Accusative :

Amussis, f. a mason's rule.	Ravis, f. hoarseness.
Buris, f. the beam of a plough.	Sināpis, f. mustard.
Cannābis, f. hemp.	Sitis, f. thirst.
Cucūmis, m. a cucumber.	Tussis, f. a cough.
Gummis, f. gum.	Vis, f. strength.
Mephītis, f. a strong smell.	

8. Proper Names in *is* have *im* in the Accusative :

Names of Cities and other places : as, *Bilbālis*, f. a city in Spain ; *Syr̄tis*, f. a quicksand on the coast of Africa.

Names of Rivers : as, *Tibēris*, m. the Tiber ; *Bætis*, m. the Guadalquivir.

Names of Gods : as, *Anūbis*, m. *Osiris*, m. Egyptian deities.

Note.—These Nouns have sometimes *in* in the Accusative : as, *Bilbālin*, *Bætin*, *Serāpin*.

9. The following Nouns in *is* have *em* or *im* in the Accusative :

Aquālis, m. a water-pot.	Puppis, f. the stern of a ship.
Clavis, f. a key.	Restis, f. a rope.
Cutis, f. the skin.	Secūris, f. an axe.
Febris, f. a fever.	Sementis, f. a sowing.
Lens, f. lentiles.	Strigīlis, f. a curry-comb.
Navis, f. a ship.	Turris, f. a tower.
Pelvis, f. a basin.	

Puppis, *restis*, *secūris*, and *turris*, have much more frequently *im* ; the others have commonly *em*. The oldest Latin writers form the Accusative of some other Nouns in *im* : as, *avis*, *auris*, &c.

10. Nouns which have been adopted from the Greek, sometimes retain *a* in the Accusative : as, *heros*, m. a hero, *herōa* ; *Tros*, m. a Trojan, *Troa*. See page 8.

This form is seldom employed by the best prose writers, and is chiefly confined to Proper Names, except in *aēr*, m. the air ; *æther*, m. the sky ; *delphin*, m. a dolphin ; and *Pan*, m. the God of the shepherds, which commonly have *aëra*, *athëra*, *delphīna*, and *Pana*.

Many Greek Nouns in *es* have *en* as well as *em* in the Accusative : as, *Euphrāten*, *Oresten*, *Pylāden*.

Ablative Singular.

11. Nouns in *is* which have *im* in the Accusative, have *i* in the Ablative : as, *sitis*, *sitim*, *siti*.

But *cannābis*, *Bætis*, *sināpis*, and *Tigris*, have *e* or *i*.

12. Nouns in *is* which have *em* or *im* in the Accusative, have *e* or *i* in the Ablative : as, *clavis*, *clave*, or *clavi*.

But *cutis* and *restis* have *e* only : *secūris*, *sementis*, and *strigīlis* have seldom *e*.

13. The following Nouns which have *em* in the Accusative, have *e* or *i* in the Ablative:

Amnis, m. a river.	Occiput, n. the hind-head.
Anguis, m. and f. a snake.	Orbis, m. a circle.
Avis, f. a bird.	Pars, f. a part.
Civis, c. a citizen.	Postis, m. a door-post.
Classis, f. a fleet.	Pugil, c. a pugilist.
Finis, m. and f. an end.	Rus, n. the country.
Fustis, m. a staff.	Sors, f. a lot.
Ignis, m. fire.	Supellex, f. furniture.
Imber, m. a shower.	Unguis, m. a nail.
Mugil, m. a mullet.	Vectis, m. a lever.

Finis, mugil, occiput, pugil, rus, supellex, and vectis, have *e* or *i* indifferently; the others have much more frequently *e*.

Names of Towns, when they denote the place *in* or *at* which any thing is done, take *e* or *i*: as, *Carthagine*, or *Carthagini*.

Canālis, m. or f. a water-pipe, has *canāli* only. Likewise names of months in *is* or *er*: as, *Aprīlis*, *September*, *Aprīli*, *Septembri*; and those Nouns in *is* which were originally Adjectives: as, *ādīlis*, *affīnis*, *bipennis*, *familiāris*, *natālis*, *rivālis*, *sodālis*, *volucris*, &c. though the last class also admit of *e*. *Rūdis*, f. a rod; and *juvenis*, c. a youth, have *e* only.

14. The following Neuter Nouns in *al* and *ar* have *e* in the Ablative:

Baccar, lady's glove.	Jubar, a sunbeam.	Sal, salt.
Far, corn.	Nectar, nectar.	

Par, when used as a Substantive, forms the Ablative Singular, and Genitive Plural, in the same way as the Adjective. See *Adjectives*.

Genitive Plural. See page 6.

15. The following Nouns have *ium* in the Genitive Plural:

Caro, f. flesh.	Fauce, f. the jaws.	Nox, f. night.
Cohors, f. a cohort.	Lar, m. a household god.	Os, n. a bone.
Cor, n. the heart.	Lintor, m. or f. a boat.	Quiris, m. a Roman.
Cos, f. a whetstone.	Mūs, m. a mouse.	Samnis, m. a Samnite.
Dos, f. a dowry.	Nix, f. snow.	Uter, m. a bottle.

The Compounds of *uncia* and *as* have likewise *ium*: as, *septunx*, m. seven ounces, *septuncium*; *sextans*, m. two ounces, *sextantium*.

Apis, f. a bee, has *apum* and *apium*; and *opis*, f. power, has *opum* only. *Gryps*, m. a griffon: *lynx*, m. or f. a lynx; and *Sphinx*, f. the Sphinx, have *um*.

16. *Bos*, c. an ox, has *boum* in the Genitive, and *bobus*, or *bubus*, in the Dative; and *sus*, c. a sow, has *suibus*, or *subus*. Nouns in *ma* have *tis* as well as *tibus*: as, *poēma*, n. a poem, *poematibus*, or

poemātis. The Greek termination *si* or *sin* is very uncommon in prose, and is admissible only in words which are purely Greek. See page 8.

17. The form of the Accusative Plural in *as* is admissible in all words which have that termination in Greek, but is rarely used in prose. Livy, however, frequently uses *Macedōnas*; and *Allobrōgas* is found in Cæsar.

IRREGULAR NOUNS.

Irregular Nouns are divided into *Variable*, *Defective*, and *Redundant*.

I. VARIABLE NOUNS.

Nouns are variable either in Gender, or Declension, or in both.

18. Masculine in the Singular, Neuter in the Plural.

Avernus, a hill in Campania.	Pangæus, a promontory in Thrace.
Dindŷmus, a hill in Phrygia.	Tænærus, a promontory in Laconia.
Ismærus, a hill in Thrace.	Tartærus, hell.
Mænælus, a hill in Arcadia.	Taygētus, a hill in Laconia.
Massicus, a hill in Campania, famous for its wines.	

19. Masc. in the Singular, Masc. and Neut. in the Plural.

Jocus, a jest. Pl. *-i*, and *-a*. Locus, a place. Pl. *-i*, and *-a*.

20. Feminine in the Singular, Neuter in the Plural.

Carbæsus, a sail. Pl. *-a*. Pergæmus, the citadel of Troy. Pl. *-a*.

21. Neuter in the Singular, Masculine in the Plural.

Argos, a city in Greece. Pl. *-i*. Elysium, the Elysian fields. Pl. *-i*. Cælum, heaven. Pl. *-i*.

Note.—*Argos*, in the Singular, is used only in the Nominative and Accusative.

22. Neut. in the Singular, Masc. and Neut. in the Plural.

Frenum, a bridle. Pl. *-i*, and *-a*. Rastrum, a rake. Pl. *-i*, and *-a*.

23. Neuter in the Singular, Feminine in the Plural.

Balneum, a bath. Pl. *-æ*, and *-a*. Epŷlem, a banquet. Pl. *-æ*. Delicium, a delight. Pl. *-æ*.

24. *Vas, vasis*, n. a vessel, of the Third Declension: Plural, *vasa, vasōrum*, of the Second. *Jugĕrum, jugĕri*, n. an acre, of the Second Declension; Plur. *jugĕra, -um*, of the Third. *Jugĕris*, and *jugĕre* from *jugus*, are also found in the Singular. See Num. 27.

II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

Nouns are defective in Cases or Number.

25. Some Nouns are altogether indeclinable: as, *pondo*, n. a pound,

or pounds; *semis*, n. the half; *mille*, n. a thousand; *cæpe*, n. an onion; and *opus*, n. need, needful, which is used both as a Substantive, and an Adjective. To these may be added, any word used for a Noun: as, *velle suum*, for *sua voluntas*, his own inclination; and Proper Names adopted from a foreign language: as, *Elisäbet*, *Jerusälem*.

I. Some Nouns are defective only in Particular Cases.

26. The following Nouns are used only in one Case:*

	<i>Nom.</i>	Fauce, f. <i>the jaws.</i>
Inquies, f. <i>want of rest.</i>		Ingratiis, f. <i>in spite of.</i>
	<i>Abl.</i>	Injussu, m. <i>without order.</i>
Admonitu, m. <i>an admonition.</i>		Interdiu, <i>by day.</i>
Ambäge, f. <i>a winding.</i>		Natu, m. <i>by birth.</i>
Casse, m. <i>a net.</i>		Noctu, f. <i>by night.</i>
Diu, <i>by day.</i>		Promptu, m. <i>in readiness.</i>
Ergô, <i>on account of.</i>		

Note.—A great many Verbal Nouns of the Fourth Declension are used only in the Abl. Singular: as, *accitu*, *promptu*, &c. *Dicis*, f. and *nauci*, n. are used only in the Gen. Sing.: as, *dicis gratiä*, for form's sake; *res nauci*, a thing of no value. *Inficias*, f. and *incita*, f. or *incitas*, have only the Acc. Plural: as, *inficias ire*, to deny; *ad incitas redactus*, reduced to extremities. *Ambäges*, *casses*, and *fauces* are regularly declined in the Plural.

27. The following Nouns are used only in two Cases:

	<i>Nom. and Acc.</i>	<i>Gen. and Abl.</i>
Astu, n. <i>the city Athens.</i>		Compëdis, -e, f. <i>a jetter.</i>
Inferiæ, -as, f. <i>sacrifices to the dead.</i>		Impëtis, -e, m. <i>force.</i>
Instar, n. <i>likeness, bigness.</i>		Jugëris, -e, n. <i>an acre.</i>
Suppetiæ, -as, f. <i>help.</i>		Spontis, -e, f. <i>of one's own accord.</i>
	<i>Nom. and Abl.</i>	Verbëris, -e, n. <i>a stripe.</i>
Astus, -u, m. <i>cunning.</i>		Repetundärum, -is, f. <i>extortion.</i>
Vesper, -e, or -i, m. <i>the evening.</i>		

Note.—*Compëdes*, *jugëra*, and *verbëra* are regularly declined in the Plural. *Astus* is found in the Nom. and Acc. Plural.

28. The following Nouns are used only in three Cases:

	<i>Nom. Acc. and Voc.</i>	<i>Epos</i> , n. <i>an heroic poem.</i>
Cacoëthes, † n. <i>a bad custom.</i>		Fas, n. <i>divine law.</i>
Cete, n. <i>whales.</i>		Grates, f. <i>thanks.</i>
Dica, -am, f. <i>a process</i> ; Pl. -as.		Melos, n. <i>a song</i> ; Pl. -e.

* Nouns which are used only in one case are called *Monoptotes*; in two cases, *Diptotes*; in three cases, *Triptotes*; in four cases, *Tetrapptotes*; in five cases, *Pentapptotes*.

† Also other Greek Neuter Nouns in *es*. See *Rules for the Gender of Nouns*, 29.

Nefas, n. <i>impiety.</i>	Mane, -e, -e, n. <i>the morning.</i>
Nihil, and Nil, n. <i>nothing.</i>	Tabes, f. <i>consumption.</i>
Tempe, n. <i>the vale of Tempe.</i>	Vepres, or -is, m. <i>a brier.</i>
Nom. Acc. and Abl.	
Lues, f. <i>a plague.</i>	

Nom. Gen. and Abl. Tabum, n. *putrid gore.*

Nom. Gen. and Acc. Munia, -ōrum, n. *offices.*

Opis, f. Gen. help (from *ops*), has *opem* and *ope* in the Acc. and Ablative, with the Plural complete, *opes*, *opum*, &c. wealth; and *precī*, f. Dat. a prayer (from *prex*), has *precem*, and *prece*, with the Plural entire, *preces*, *precum*, &c. *Femīnis*, n. Gen. the thigh (from *femcn*), has *femīni*, and -e, in the Dat. and Abl. Singular; and *femīna* in the Nom. Acc. and Voc. Plural.

Note.—*Vepres* has the Plural entire; and *tabes*, and *gratibus*, the Nominative and Ablative Plural of *tabes*, and *grates* are also found.

The following Nouns want the Genitive, Dative, and Ablative Plural:

Far, n. <i>corn.</i>	Mel, n. <i>honey.</i>	Rus, n. <i>the country.</i>
Hiems, f. <i>winter.</i>	Metus, m. <i>fear.</i>	Thus, n. <i>frankincense.</i>

For Nouns of the Fifth Declension, See page 10.

29. The following Nouns want the Nominative and Vocative, and are therefore used only in four Cases:

Ditiōnis, f. <i>poet.</i>	Sordis, f. <i>filth.</i>
Pecūdis, f. <i>a beast.</i>	Vicis, f. <i>a change.</i>

To these may be added *daps*, f. a dish; *frux*, f. corn; and *nex*, f. slaughter, which are seldom used in the Nominative. The Plural of *frux* is entire; *daps* wants the Genitive; and *nex* seems to have the Nom. Acc. and Voc. only.

Chaos, n. a confused mass, wants the Gen. and Dat. Singular, and is not used in the Plural.

Note.—*Pecūdis* and *sordis* have the Plural entire: *vicis* is defective in the Genitive; *ditiōnis* has no Plural.

30. Some Nouns are defective in one Case.

The following want the Genitive Plural:

Fæx, f. <i>dregs.</i>	Proles, f. <i>offspring.</i>
Fax, f. <i>a torch.</i>	Ros, m. <i>dew.</i>
Labes, f. <i>a stain.</i>	Sobōles, f. <i>offspring.</i>
Lux, f. <i>light.</i>	Sol, m. <i>the sun.</i>
Os, n. <i>the mouth.</i>	

Satias, f. a glut of any thing, and *salum*, n. the sea, want the Gen. Sing. and the Plural entirely. *Situs*, m. a situation, nastiness, wants the Gen. and perhaps the Dat. Sing. and probably the Gen. Dat. and

Abl. Plural. *Nemo*, c. nobody, wants the Voc. Sing. and has no Plural.

II. Many Nouns are defective in Number.

31. Some Nouns, from the nature of the things which they express, cannot be used in the Plural. Such are the names of virtues and vices, of arts, herbs, metals, liquors, different kinds of corn, abstract nouns, &c. : as, *justitia*, justice; *luxus*, luxury; *musica*, music; *apium*, parsley; *aurum*, gold; *lac*, milk; *tritĭcum*, wheat; *magnitudo*, greatness; *senectus*, old age; *macies*, leanness, &c. But some of the Nouns included in these classes are occasionally found in the Plural.

32. The following Masculine Nouns are scarcely used in the Plural:

<i>Aër</i> , <i>aëris</i> , the air.	<i>Penus</i> , -i, or -ūs, all manner of provisions.
<i>Æther</i> , -ëris, the sky.	<i>Pontus</i> , -i, the sea.
<i>Fimus</i> , -i, dung.	<i>Pulvis</i> , -ëris, dust.
<i>Hespërus</i> , -i, the evening star.	<i>Sanguis</i> , -ĭnis, blood.
<i>Limus</i> , -i, mud.	<i>Sopor</i> , -ōris, sleep.
<i>Meridies</i> , -iëi, mid-day.	<i>Veternus</i> , -i, a lethargy.
<i>Mundus</i> , -i, a woman's ornaments.	
<i>Muscus</i> , -i, moss.	

Note.—*Aër*, *pulvis*, and *sopor*, are found in the Plural.

33. The following Feminine Nouns are scarcely used in the Plural:

<i>Argilla</i> , -æ, potter's earth.	<i>Salus</i> , -ūtis, safety.
<i>Fames</i> , -is, hunger.	<i>Sitis</i> , -is, thirst.
<i>Humus</i> , -i, the ground.	<i>Supellex</i> , -ctĭlis, household furniture.
<i>Indoles</i> , -is, a disposition.	<i>Venia</i> , -æ, pardon.
<i>Plebs</i> , -is, the common people.	<i>Vespëra</i> , -æ, the evening.
<i>Pubes</i> , -is, the youth.	

The following are sometimes found in the Plural:

<i>Bilis</i> , -is, bile.	<i>Pituĭta</i> , -æ, phlegm.
<i>Cholëra</i> , -æ, cholera.	<i>Pix</i> , -cis, pitch.
<i>Cutis</i> , -is, the skin.	<i>Proles</i> , -is, offspring.
<i>Fama</i> , -æ, fame.	<i>Quies</i> , -ëtis, rest.
<i>Gloria</i> , -æ, glory.	<i>Soboles</i> , -is, offspring.
<i>Labes</i> , -is, a stain.	<i>Tellus</i> , -ŭris, the earth.
<i>Pax</i> , -cis, peace.	

34. The following Neuter Nouns are scarcely used in the Plural:

<i>Album</i> , -i, a list of names.	<i>Fœnum</i> , -i, hay.
<i>Barăthrum</i> , -i, any deep place.	<i>Gelu</i> , frost, ind.
<i>Dilucŭlum</i> , -i, the dawn of day.	<i>Hilum</i> , -i, the black speck of a bean, a trifle.
<i>Ebur</i> , -ōris, ivory.	

Jubar, -āris, <i>the sunbeam.</i>	Penum, -i, and penus, -ōris, <i>all kinds of provisions.</i>
Justitium, -i, <i>a vacation, the time when courts do not sit.</i>	Pus, puris, <i>matter.</i>
Lardum, -i, <i>bacon.</i>	Sal, salis, <i>salt.</i>
Lethum, -i, <i>death.</i>	Ver, veris, <i>the spring.</i>
Lutum, -i, <i>clay.</i>	Virus, -i, <i>poison.</i>
Nectar, -āris, <i>nectar.</i>	Viscum, -i, <i>the mistletoe.</i>
Pelāgus, -i, <i>the sea.</i>	Vitrum, -i, <i>glass.</i>
	Vulgus, -i, <i>the rabble.</i>

Note.—*Ebur, lardum, lutum, and pus* are found in the Plural; and *pelāge* is found, in some cases, as the Plural of *pelāgus*; *sal*, as a Neuter Noun, is not used in the Plural.

35. Many Nouns want the Singular; as the Names of feasts, books, games, and of many cities and places: as,

Apollināres, -ium, <i>games in honour of Apollo.</i>	Hierosolŷma, -ōrum, <i>Jerusalem.</i>
Bacchanālia, -um, and feasts of Bacchus.	Olympia, -ōrum, <i>the Olympic games.</i>
Bucolīca, -ōrum, <i>a book of pastorals.</i>	Syracūsæ, -ārum, <i>Syracuse.</i>
	Thermopŷlæ, -ārum, <i>the straits of Thermopylæ.</i>

36. The following Masculine Nouns are scarcely used in the Singular:

Antes, <i>the front rows of vines.</i>	Lemŷres, -um, <i>ghosts, hobgoblins.</i>
Cancelli, <i>lattices, or windows made with cross-bars.</i>	Libĕri, <i>children.</i>
Cani, <i>gray hairs.</i>	Majōres, -um, <i>ancestors.</i>
Celĕres, -um, <i>the light-horse.</i>	Manes, -ium, <i>ghosts.</i>
Codicilli, <i>writings.</i>	Minōres, -um, <i>successors.</i>
Fasti, -ōrum, or fastus, -uum, <i>calendars, in which were marked festival days, &c.</i>	Penātes, -um, or -ium, <i>household gods.</i>
Fori, <i>the gangways of a ship, or seats in the Circus.</i>	Postĕri, <i>posterity.</i>
Infĕri, <i>the gods below.</i>	Procĕres, -um, <i>the nobles.</i>
	Pugillāres, -ium, <i>writing tables.</i>
	Supĕri, <i>the gods above.</i>

Note.—*Libĕri* and *procĕres* (*procĕrum*) are also found in the Singular. Some of the others, as, *infĕri, majōres, &c.* are properly Adjectives, and agree with the Substantives which are implied in their signification.

37. The following Feminine Nouns want the Singular:

Clitellæ, <i>a pannier.</i>	Exuviæ, <i>spoils.</i>	Insidiæ, <i>snares.</i>
Cunæ, <i>a cradle.</i>	Feriæ, <i>holidays.</i>	Kalendæ, Nonæ, Idus, -uum, <i>names which the Romans gave to certain days in each month.</i>
Diræ, <i>imprecations.</i>	Gerræ, <i>trifles.</i>	
Divitiæ, <i>riches.</i>	Induciæ, <i>a truce.</i>	
Excubiæ, <i>watches.</i>	Induviæ, <i>clothes to put on.</i>	
Exsequiæ, <i>funerals.</i>		

Lactes, <i>the small guts.</i>	Nuptiæ, <i>a marriage.</i>	Scopæ, <i>a besom.</i>
Lapidinæ, <i>stone quarries.</i>	Parietînæ, <i>ruinous walls.</i>	Tenebræ, <i>darkness.</i>
Manubiæ, <i>spoils taken in war.</i>	Phalëræ, <i>trappings.</i>	Thermæ, <i>hot baths.</i>
Minæ, <i>threats.</i>	Primitiæ, <i>first fruits.</i>	Tricæ, <i>toys.</i>
Nugæ, <i>trifles.</i>	Reliquiæ, <i>a remainder.</i>	Valvæ, <i>folding doors.</i>
Nundinæ, <i>a market.</i>	Salinæ, <i>salt-pits.</i>	Vindiciæ, <i>a claim of liberty, a defence.</i>
	Scalæ, <i>a ladder.</i>	

The following are sometimes found in the Singular :

Argutiæ, <i>quirks, witticisms.</i>	Charîtes, -um, <i>the Graces.</i>
Bigæ, <i>a chariot drawn by two horses.</i>	Facetiæ, <i>pleasant sayings.</i>
Trigæ, — <i>by three.</i>	Ineptiæ, <i>silly stories.</i>
Quadrigæ, — <i>by four.</i>	Præstigiæ, <i>enchantments.</i>
Braccæ, <i>breeches.</i>	Salebræ, <i>rugged places.</i>

38. The following Neuter Nouns want the Singular :

Acta, <i>public acts, or records.</i>	Lautia, <i>provisions for the entertainment of foreign ambassadors.</i>
Æstiva, <i>summer quarters.</i>	Magalia, -um, <i>cottages.</i>
Arma, <i>arms.</i>	Mœnia, -um, <i>the walls of a city.</i>
Bellaria, <i>dainties.</i>	Orgia, <i>the sacred rites of Bacchus.</i>
Brevia, -um, <i>shallows.</i>	Parentalia, -um, <i>solemnities at the funeral of parents.</i>
Cibaria, <i>victuals.</i>	Præcordia, <i>the midriff, the bowels.</i>
Crepundia, <i>children's toys.</i>	Sponsalia, -um, <i>espousals.</i>
Cunabûla, <i>a cradle, an origin.</i>	Stativa, <i>a standing camp.</i>
Extæ, <i>the entrails.</i>	Talaria, -um, <i>winged shoes.</i>
Februa, <i>purifying sacrifices.</i>	Tesqua, <i>rough places.</i>
Flabra, <i>blasts of wind.</i>	Transtra, <i>the seats where the rowers sit in ships.</i>
Fraga, <i>strawberries.</i>	Utensilia, -um, <i>utensils.</i>
Hyberna, <i>winter quarters.</i>	
Iia, -um, <i>the entrails.</i>	
Justa, <i>funeral rites.</i>	
Lamenta, <i>lamentations.</i>	

Note.—Acta and transtra are also found in the Singular. Some of the others, as, *æstiva, brevia, hyberna, stativa*, &c. are properly Adjectives; and agree with the Substantives which are necessary to complete their meaning.

III. REDUNDANT NOUNS.

39. Nouns are redundant in Termination, Gender, or form of Declension: as, *arbor*, or *arbos*, a tree; *vulgus*, the rabble, Masc. or Neut. *menda*, -æ, or *mendum*, -i, a fault.

The most numerous class of Redundant Nouns is composed of those which express the same meaning by different terminations: as,

Æther, -ëris, & *æthra*, -æ, *the air.* Amaracus, & -um, *sweet marjoram.*
 Alvear, & -e, & -ium, *a bee-hive.*

Anclē & -ium, <i>an oval shield.</i>	Macēria, & -ies, -iēi, <i>a wall.</i>
Angiportus, -ūs. & -i, & -um, <i>a narrow lane.</i>	Materia, -æ, & -ies, -iēi, <i>matter.</i>
Aphractus, & -um, <i>an open ship.</i>	Menda, -æ, & -um, -i, <i>a fault.</i>
Aplustre, & -um, <i>the flag, colours.</i>	Milliāre, & -ium, <i>a mile.</i>
Arbor, & -os, <i>a tree.</i>	Monitum, & -us, -ūs, <i>an admonition.</i>
Bacūlus, & -um, <i>a staff.</i>	Muria, & -ies, -iēi, <i>brine, or pickle.</i>
Balteus, & -um, <i>a belt.</i>	Nasus & -um, <i>the nose.</i>
Batillus, & -um, <i>a fireshovel.</i>	Obsidio, & -um, <i>a siege.</i>
Capus, & -o, <i>a capon.</i>	Ostrea, -æ, & -ea, -ōrum, <i>an oyster.</i>
Cassis, -īdis, & -īda, -īdæ, <i>a helmet.</i>	Penus, -ūs, & -i; & -um; & -us, -ōris, <i>provisions.</i>
Cepa, -æ, & -e, <i>indec. an onion.</i>	Peplus, & -um, <i>a veil, a robe.</i>
Clypeus, & -um, <i>a shield.</i>	Pistrīna, & -um, <i>a grinding-house.</i>
Colluvies, & -io, <i>filth, dirt.</i>	Plebs, & -es, <i>the common people.</i>
Compāges, & -go, <i>a joining.</i>	Prætextus, -ūs, & -um, <i>a pretext.</i>
Conger, & -grus, <i>a large eel.</i>	Rapum, & -a, <i>a turnip.</i>
Crocus, & -um, <i>saffron.</i>	Ruma, & -men, <i>the cud.</i>
Cubitus, & -um, <i>a cubit.</i>	Ruscum, & -us, <i>butcher's broom.</i>
Diluvium, & -es, <i>a deluge.</i>	Segmen, & -mentum, <i>a paring.</i>
Elēgi, -ōrum, & -īa, <i>an elegy.</i>	Sepes & Seps, <i>a hedge.</i>
Elephantus, & Elephas, -antis, <i>an elephant.</i>	Sibīlus, & -a, -ōrum, <i>a hissing.</i>
Essēda, & -um, <i>a chariot.</i>	Sinus, & -um, <i>a milk-pail.</i>
Eventus, & -a, -ōrum, <i>an event.</i>	Stramen, & -tum, <i>straw.</i>
Gausāpa, & -e, -es; & -e, -is; & -um, <i>a rough cloth.</i>	Suffimen, & -tum, <i>a perfume.</i>
Gelu, & -um, <i>frost.</i>	Tignus, & -um, <i>a plank.</i>
Gibbus, & -a; & -er, -ēris, or -ēri, <i>a bunch, a swelling.</i>	Toral, & -āle, <i>a bed-covering.</i>
Glūtinum, & -en, <i>glue.</i>	Tonitrus, -us, & -u, & -uum, <i>thunder.</i>
Grus, -uis, & -uis, -uis, <i>a crane.</i>	Torcūlar, & -āre, <i>a wine-press.</i>
Laurus, -i, & -ūs, <i>a laurel tree.</i>	Veternus, & -um, <i>a lethargy.</i>
	Viscum, & -us, <i>the mistletoe.</i>

Note.—Some of the above nouns may be used in either, or any of the terminations, and in the Singular or Plural, indifferently; some, as *auxilium*, *laurus*, -ūs, are used only in one or two cases; or in one number, as *elēgi*; while others, as *prætextus* (a pretext) and *prætextum* (a border), though sometimes synonymous, are commonly employed in a different meaning.

40. The following Nouns have a double meaning in the Plural—one in addition to that which generally belongs to them in the Singular:

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Aedes, <i>a temple.</i>	Aedes, <i>a house.</i>
Auxilium, <i>assistance.</i>	Auxilia, <i>auxiliary troops.</i>
Bonum, <i>any thing good.</i>	Bona, <i>goods, property.</i>
Carcer, <i>a prison.</i>	Carcēres, <i>the barriers of a race-course.</i>

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Castrum, <i>a fort.</i>	Castra, <i>a camp.</i>
Comitium, <i>a place in the Roman forum where the comitia were held.</i>	Comitia, <i>an assembly of the people for the purpose of voting.</i>
Copia, <i>plenty.</i>	Copiæ, <i>troops.</i>
Cupedia, <i>daintiness.</i>	Cupediæ, <i>or -a, dainties.</i>
Facultas, <i>power, ability.</i>	Facultates, <i>wealth, property.</i>
Fascis, <i>a bundle of twigs, a fagot.</i>	Fasces, <i>a bundle of rods carried before the chief magistrates of Rome.</i>
Finis, <i>the end of any thing.</i>	Fines, <i>the boundaries of a country.</i>
Fortūna, <i>fortune.</i>	Fortūnæ, <i>an estate, possessions.</i>
Gratia, <i>grace, favour.</i>	Gratiæ, <i>thanks.</i>
Hortus, <i>a garden.</i>	Horti, <i>pleasure-grounds.</i>
Litĕra, <i>a letter of the alphabet.</i>	Litĕræ, <i>a letter, an epistle.</i>
Lustrum, <i>a period of five years.</i>	Lustra, <i>dens of wild beasts.</i>
Natālis, <i>a birth-day.</i>	Natāles, <i>birth, descent.</i>
Opĕra, <i>labour.</i>	Opĕræ, <i>workmen.</i>
Opis (Gen.), <i>help.</i>	Opes, <i>wealth, power.</i>
Pars, <i>a part, a portion.</i>	Partes, <i>a party, a faction.</i>
Plāga, <i>a space, a tract of country.</i>	Plāgæ, <i>nets used by hunters.</i>
Principium, <i>a beginning, a principle, or element.</i>	Principia, <i>a place in the camp where the general's tent stood.</i>
Rostrum, <i>the beak of a bird, the sharp part of the prow of a ship.</i>	Rostra, <i>a pulpit in the Roman forum, from which orators used to address the people.</i>
Sal, <i>salt.</i>	Sales, <i>witticisms.</i>

Note.—All the Nouns in the preceding list, except *castrum* and *comitium*, are sometimes found in the Singular, in the sense in which they more commonly occur in the Plural.

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

THIRD DECLENSION.

41. The following Adjectives have *e* only in the Ablative Singular, and *um* in the Genitive Plural:

Cælebs, <i>unmarried.</i>	Pubis, <i>marriageable.</i>
Compos, <i>master of.</i>	Senex, <i>old.</i>
*Concōlor, <i>of the same colour.</i>	Sospes, <i>safe.</i>
Hospes, <i>strange.</i>	Superstes, <i>surviving.</i>
Impos, <i>unable.</i>	*Tricorpor, <i>three-bodied.</i>
Impūbis, <i>beardless.</i>	*Tricuspis, <i>three-pointed.</i>
Juvenis, <i>young.</i>	*Tripes, <i>three-footed.</i>
Pauper, <i>poor.</i>	Vetus, <i>old.</i>

* The other compounds of *color*, *corpor*, *cuspis*, and *pes*, have likewise *e* and *um*.

Note.—*Cælebs*, *compos*, *impos*, and *superstes*, have sometimes, though rarely, *i* in the Ablative. *Vetus* has commonly *i*, but always *vetëra* and *vetërum*.

42. The following Adjectives have *um* in the Genitive Plural:

Ales, <i>winged</i> .	Inops, <i>poor</i> .
Anceps, <i>double</i> .	Memor, <i>mindful</i> .
Artifex, <i>artificial</i> .	Particeps, <i>sharing</i> .
Celer, <i>swift</i> .	Præceps, <i>headlong</i> .
*Compar, <i>equal</i> .	Supplex, <i>suppliant</i> .
Consors, <i>sharing</i> .	Uber, <i>fertile</i> .
Degëner, <i>degenerate</i> .	Vigil, <i>watchful</i> .
Dives, <i>rich</i> .	Volucris, <i>swift</i> .

* *Dispar*, different, *impar*, unequal, and *separ*, separate, have also *um*. *Par* has *i* only in the Ablative, and *ium* in the Genitive Plural, but its compounds have, in the poets, *e* or *i* indifferently.

Note.—*Celer*, *memor*, and *volucris*, have *i* only in the Ablative; and the last, with *vigil*, has sometimes *um* in the Genitive Plural.

Locuples, rich, has *locuplētum*, or *locupletium*.

Adjectives ending in *ns*, Comparatives, and Participles, particularly when used in an *Absolute sense*, have much more frequently *e* than *i* in the Ablative Singular.

DEFECTIVE ADJECTIVES.

43. *Quot*, how many? *tot*, so many; *aliquot*, some; *quotquot*, and *quotcunque*, how many soever; *totidem*, just so many, are indeclinable, and used only in the Plural Number. *Nequam*, worthless, is also indeclinable, but used in both Numbers.

44. *Exspes*, hopeless; and *potis*, *pote*, able, are used only in the Nominative. They are of all Genders, and the latter is also found joined with Plural Nouns.

Tantundem, as much, has *tantūdem*, in the Genitive, and *tantundem*, m. and n. in the Nominative and Accusative Singular.

Necesse, or *-um*, necessary; and *volūpe*, pleasant, are used only in the Nominative and Accusative Singular.

45. *Mactus*, *-e*, and Pl. *-i*, a common word of encouragement, brave! gallant! is used only in the Nominative, and Vocative Singular, and Nominative Plural.

Plus, more, is Neuter only in the Singular; wants the Dative, and probably the Vocative; has *e* only in the Ablative, and *a*, seldom *ia*, in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural Neuter.

Primōris, Gen. first, wants the Nominative and Voc. Singular, and the Nom. Acc. and Voc. Plural Neuter; likewise *semīnēcis*, half-dead, which is not used in the Neuter and has *semīnēcum*, in the Genitive Plural.

Pauci, few, and *plerique*, the most part, are seldom used in the Singular.

46. The following classes of words want the Vocative: Partitives; as, *quidam*, *alius*: Relatives; as, *qualis*, *quantus*: Negatives; as, *nullus*, *neuter*: Interrogatives; as, *quotus?* *uter?*

Except *aliquis*, *quicumque*, *quilibet*, and *quisque*. See pages 20, and 21.

47. The following Adjectives of one termination in *er*, *es*, *or*, *os*, and *fex*, with the others contained in the subjoined list, are scarcely used in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural Neuter.

Adjectives in ER: as, *pauper*, *puber*, *celer*, *degener*, *uber*.

Adjectives in FEX: as, *artifex*, *carnifex*.

Adjectives in OR: as, *memor*, *concolor*, *bicorpor*.

Adjectives in ES: as, *ales*, *dives*, *locuples*, *sospes*, *superstes*, *deses*, *reses*, *hebes*, *teres*, *præpes*.

Adjectives in OS: as, *compos*, *impos*, *exos*.

Also *pubis*, *impūbis*, *supplex*, *comis*, *inops*, *vigil*, *sons*, *insons*, *intercus*, *redux*, and, perhaps, some others.

Cæter, or *cæterus*, the rest, is scarcely used in the Nom. Sing. Masculine.

Victrix, victorious, and *ultrix*, revengeful, are Feminine only in the Sing. but Fem. and Neut. in the Plural: as, *victrices*, *victricia*.

REDUNDANT ADJECTIVES.

48. Some Adjectives compounded of *clivus*, *frēnum*, *bacillum*, *arma*, *jūgum*, *linus*, *somnus*, and *animus*, have two forms of Declension; one in *us*, of the First and Second Declension; and another in *is*, of the Third: as, *acclivus*, *-a*, *-um*, and *acclivis*, *-e*, steep; *imbecillus*, and *imbecillis*, weak; *semisomnus*, and *semisomnis*, half-sleeping; *exanimus* and *exanimis*, dead. Also *hilāris* and *hilārus*, merry.

Note.—Some of these Compounds do not admit of this variation: as, *magnanimus*, *flexanimus*, *effrenus*, *levisomnus*, not *magnanimis*, &c. On the contrary, *pusillanimis*, *injūgis*, *illimis*, *insonnis*, *exsominis*, are used, and not *pusillanimus*, &c. *Semianimis*, *inermis*, *sublimis*, *acclivis*, *declivis*, *proclivis*, are more common than *semianimus*, &c. *Inanimis* and *bijūgis* are scarcely used.

IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE COMPARISON.

See page 17.

49. The following Adjectives form the Superlative in *limus*:

Facilis, easy,	facilior,	facillimus.
Gracilis, lean.	gracilior,	gracillimus.

Humilis, <i>low</i> ,	humilior,	humillimus.
Imbecillis, <i>weak</i> ,	imbecillior,	imbecillimus.
Similis, <i>like</i> .	similior,	simillimus.

50. The following Adjectives have the Comparative regular, but the Superlative irregular :

Citer, <i>near</i> ,	citerior,	citimus.
Dexter, <i>right</i> ,	dexterior,	dextimus.
Exter, <i>outward</i> ,	exterior,	extrēmus, or extimus.
Infērus, <i>low</i> ,	inferior,	infimus, or imus.
Intērus, <i>inward</i> ,	interior,	intimus.
Matūrus, <i>ripe</i> ,	maturior,	maturrimus, or maturissimus.
Postērus, <i>behind</i> ,	posterior,	postrēmus, or postumus.
Sinister, <i>left</i> ,	sinisterior,	sinistimus.
Supērus, <i>high</i> ,	superior,	suprēmus, or summus.
Vetus, <i>old</i> ,	veterior,	veterrimus.

Note.—*Dives*, rich, has commonly *ditior* and *ditissimus*, for its Comparative and Superlative; contracted for *divitior* and *divitissimus*.

51. Compounds in *dicus*, *ficus*, *loquus*, and *völus*, form the Comparative in *entior* and the Superlative in *entissimus*.

Maledicus, <i>railing</i> ,	maledicentior,	maledicentissimus.
Beneficus, <i>beneficent</i> ,	beneficentior,	beneficentissimus.
Mirificus, <i>wonderful</i> ,	mirificentior,	mirificentissimus.
Magniloquus, <i>boasting</i> ,	magniloquentior.	
Benevölus, <i>benevolent</i> ,	benevolentior,	benevolentissimus.

Note.—*Mirificus* has also *mirificissimus* in the Superlative. The Compounds of *loquus* are not found in the Superlative.

52. The following Adjectives want the Positive :

Deterior, <i>worse</i> ,	deterrimus.	Propior, <i>nearer</i> ,	proximus.
Ociior, <i>swifter</i> ,	ocissimus.	Uterior, <i>farther</i> ,	ultimus.
Prior, <i>former</i> ,	primus.		

53. The following Adjectives want the Comparative :

Inclytus, <i>renowned</i> ,	inclytissimus.	Par, <i>equal</i> ,	parissimus.
Invictus, <i>invincible</i> ,	invictissimus.	Persuasus, <i>persuaded</i> ,	persuasissimus.
Meritus, <i>deserving</i> ,	meritissimus.		
Novus, <i>new</i> ,	novissimus.	Pius, <i>holy</i> ,	piissimus.
Nupērus, <i>late</i> ,	nuperrimus.	Sacer, <i>sacred</i> ,	sacerrimus.

54 The following Adjectives want the Superlative :

Adolescens, <i>young</i> ,	adolescentior.	Pronus, <i>inclined downwards</i> ,	pronior.
Diuturnus, <i>lasting</i> ,	diuturnior.	Satur, <i>full</i> ,	saturior.
Ingens, <i>huge</i> ,	ingentior.	Senex, <i>old</i> ,	senior.
Juvenis, <i>young</i> ,	junior.		
Opimus, <i>rich</i> ,	opimior.		

Note.—The Superlative of *juvĕnis*, and *adolescens*, is supplied by *minĭmus natu*, the youngest; *senex* takes *maxĭmus natu*, the oldest.

55. Almost all Adjectives in *ĭlis* (penult long), *Ālis* and *Īlis*, want the Superlative: as, *civilis*, *civilior*, civil; *regālis*, *regalior*, regal; *ſtebĭlis*, *-ior*, lamentable.

Note.—Some Adjectives of these terminations are also compared, as, *æquālis*, *frugālis*, *hospitālis*, *liberālis*, *vocālis*—*affābĭlis*, *amābĭlis*, *habĭlis*, *ignobĭlis*, *mirābĭlis*, *mobĭlis*, *mutābĭlis*, *nobĭlis*, *stabĭlis*.

Some Adjectives of other terminations also want the Superlative: as, *arcānus*, *-ior*, secret; *declĭvis*, *-ior*, bending downwards; *longinquus*, *-ior*, far off; *propinquus*, *-ior*, near; *ſalutāris*, healthful, *ſalutarior*.

Anterior, former, and *ſequior*, worse, are only found in the comparative.

Nequam, worthless (indeclinable), has *nequior*, *nequiſſĭmus*.

56. Many Adjectives, which are capable of having their ſignification increased, do not admit of comparison: as, *albus*, white; *almus*, gracious; *egĕnus*, needy; *lacer*, torn; *memor*, mindful; *mirus*, wonderful; *precox*, early ripe; *ſoſpes*, ſafe, &c.

Participles in *rus* and *dus*, and Adjectives in *ĭvus*, *ĭnus*, *ōrus*, and *ĭmus*: as, *fugĭtĭvus*, fugitive; *matutĭnus*, early; *canōrus*, ſhrill; *legĭtĭmus*, lawful.

Adjectives compounded with Nouns and Verbs: as, *verſicōlor*, of various colours; *degĕner*, degenerating; *peſtifer*, poisonous, &c.

Diminutives, which, in themſelves, involve a ſort of comparison: as, *tenellus*, ſomewhat tender; *majuſoŭlus*, ſomewhat big.

Adjectives, in which a vowel precedes *us*, except thoſe in *quus*, form the Comparative by putting *magis* before the Positive; and the Superlative by putting *valde*, or *maxime* before it: as, *arduus*, high; *magis arduus*; *valde*, or *maxime arduus*.

VERBS.

General Rules for Compound Verbs.

1. Compound Verbs form the Perfect and Supine in the ſame manner as Simple Verbs: as, *amo*, *amāvi*, *amātum*; *red-āmo*, *red-amāvi*, *red-amātum*.

2. When the Simple Verbs double the firſt ſyllable in the Perfect, the Compounds drop the former Syllable: as, *pello*, *pepŭli*; *re-pello*, *re-pŭli*. Except the Compounds of *do*, *ſto*, *diſco*, *poſco*, and ſome of the Compounds of *curro*. See p. 122.

3. Compound Verbs which change *a* of the Preſent into *i*, have *e* in the Supine: as, *facio*: *per-ficio*, *per-fĕci*, *per-ſectum*. Except Verbs ending in *do*, *go*, with *diſpĭceo*, and the Compounds of *habeo*, *ſalio*, and *ſtatuo*.

4. Verbs which are defective in the Perfect likewiſe want the Supine. *Cico*,—*cĭtum*, *ciĕre*, to ſtir up, is probably the only exception.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

RULE.—Verbs of the First Conjugation have *āvi* in the Perfect, and *ātum* in the Supine : as,

Amo,	amāvi,	amātum,	to love.
Muto,	mutāvi,	mutātum,	to change.

EXCEPTIONS.

The Tenses of some Verbs included in the lists of Exceptions are also found, especially in the earliest authors, conjugated according to the General Rules. The form here given is that which is in common use.

Do, ¹	dēdi,	dātum,	to give.
Sto, ²	stēti,	stātum,	to stand.
Lāvo,	lāvi,	{ lavātum,	to wash.
		{ lautum,	
		{ lōtum,	
Pōto, ³	potāvi,	{ potātum, or	to drink.
Jūvo, ⁴	jūvi,	{ pōtum,	
		jūtum,	to assist.

*Do dedit atque dātum format, compositaque primæ
Quæ venum, circum, pessumque, satisque creārunť.
Sto stetit et statum pōcit : STITIT at sibi proles
Exigit atque STITUM, multò sed crebrius ATUM.*

¹ *Circumdo*, to surround ; *pessundo*, to ruin ; *satisdo*, to give surety ; and *venundo*, to sell, are conjugated like *do*. The other Compounds belong to the third Conjugation, and have *dēdi* in the Perfect, and *dītum* in the Supine : as, *abdo*, *abdēdi*, *abdītum*, *abdēre*, to hide ; *reddo*, *reddēdi*, *reddītum*, to give back. See p. 107, Rule 2.

² The Compounds of *sto* have *stēti* in the Perfect, and *stātum* in the Supine : as, *consto*, *constēti*, *constātum*, to stand together. Some of the Compounds are said to have also *stītum* in the Supine : as, *præsto*, *præstēti*, *præstītum*, or *præstātum*, to stand before, to excel ; but the Future Participle is always formed from *stātum*. *Adsto*, to stand by, *prosto*, to stand, to be sold, and *resto*, to remain over and above, have no Supine. *Antesto*, to stand before ; *circumsto*, to stand round ; *intersto*, to stand between ; and *supersto*, to stand over, have *stēti*, in the Perfect, and want the Supine. *Disto*, to be distant, and *substo*, to stand under, have neither Perfect nor Supine. See p. 107, Rule 2.

A lavo fit lavi, lautum, lotum, atque lavatum.

Poto potatum vel potum flecte : juvoque

Dat juvi ; at soboles jutum propè sola reservat.

³ The Perfect Participle *pōtus*, is used both in a Passive sense, *that has been drunk*, and in an active sense, *having drunk*. The compounds *epōtus* and *perpōtus* are used only in the Passive sense.

⁴ *Jutus*, the Perfect Participle from *jutum*, is fowid ; but the

Cūbo, ⁸	cubul,	cabĭtum,	to lie.
Dōmo,	domui,	domĭtum,	to subdue.
Sōno, ⁹	sonui,	sonĭtum, [*]	to sound.
Tōno, ⁷	tonui,	tonĭtum,	to thunder.
Vĕto, ⁶	vetui,	vetĭtum,	to forbid.
Crĕpo, ⁹	crepui,	crepĭtum,	to make a noise.
Mĭco, ¹⁰	micui,	_____	to glitter.
Frico, ¹¹	fricui,	frictum,	to rub.
Sĕco,	secui,	sectum,	to cut.
Nĕco, ¹²	{ necāvi, or necui,	necātum,	to kill.

Future Participle is *juvatūrus*. *Adjūvo*, to help, has *adjutūrus*, the other form being scarcely in use.

Hæc per UI per ITUMque, *cubo*, *domo* cum *sono* flectes,
Et *tono*, *junge veto*, simul et *crepo* : *discrepo* normam

Sed potiùs sequitur : *mico* vult *micuique*, *supini*

Impatiens : AVI tamen ATUM *dimico* præfert ;

Quam tenuit legem *replico* cum *supplico*, et omne

Quod *plico* componit verbum cum nomine junctum.

Cætera sed soboles ritu variantur utroque.

At *frico* vult *fricui*, *frictum* ; *secui*, *seco*, *sectum* ;

Interdumque *neco*, *necui* ; quod sæpiùs AVI

Atque ATUM poscit. *Labo*, *nexo*, cum *plico* nil dant.

⁶ In the same manner those Compounds are conjugated which do not assume an *m* : as, *accūbo*, to lie next to ; *excūbo*, to watch ; *incūbo*, to lie anywhere ; *occūbo*, to lie in a place ; *procūbo*, to lie before ; *recūbo*, to lie down ; *secūbo*, to lie alone. The Compounds which assume an *m* belong to the Third Conjugation, and have *ui* and *ĭtum* in the Perfect and Supine : as, *incumbo*, *incubui*, *incubĭtum*, to lie upon.

⁶ The Future Participle is *sonatūrus*.

⁷ *Intōno* has *intonātus* in the Perfect Participle.

⁸ *Vĕto* has sometimes *vetāvi* in the Perfect.

⁹ *Discrepo*, to differ, and *incrĕpo*, to chide, have sometimes *āvi* and *ātum*, as well as *ui* and *ĭtum*. *Incrĕpo* has seldom the latter form.

¹⁰ *Emĭco*, to shine forth, has *emicui*, *emicātum* ; and *dimĭco*, to fight, has *dimicāvi*, rarely *dimicui*, *dimicātum*.

¹¹ Some of the Compounds of *frico* have the Participles formed from the regular Supine in *ātum* : as, *confricātus*, *infricātus*.

¹² *Enĕco*, to kill, and *internĕco*, to destroy, have more frequently *ui* and *ectum* ; the Participle of *enĕco* is usually *enectus*.

* The Supine *sonĭtum* has been retained in deference to general usage ; but there does not appear to be any authority for it except the verbal substantive *sonitus* ; while *sonaturus*, which is used by Horace Sat. I. 4. 44. and the adjective *sonabilis*, which is found in Ovid, Art. Am. I. 106., seem to prove that the Supine ought to be *sonātum*.

Lābo,	_____	_____	to fall, or faint.
Nexo,	_____	_____	to bind.
Plīco, ¹³	_____	_____	to fold.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

RULE.—Verbs of the Second Conjugation have *ui* in the Perfect, and *itum* in the Supine: as,

Mōneo,	monui,	monitum,	to advise.
Hābeo, ¹	habui,	habitum,	to have.

EXCEPTIONS.

Neuter Verbs which have *ui* in the Perfect, want the Supine: as, *splendeo, splendui*, to shine; *mādeo, madui*, to be wet.

The following Neuter Verbs have *ui* and *itum*, according to the general rule:

Cāleo, to be hot.	Līceo, to be valued.
Cāreo, to want.	Mēreo, to deserve.
Coāleo, to grow together.	Nōceo, to hurt.
Dōleo, to grieve.	Pāreo, to appear.
Jāceo, to lie.	Plāceo, to please. ²
Lāteo, ³ to lie hid.	Vāleo, to be in health.

Quod dat UI neutrum, timeo, siloque supina
 Nulla dabunt. Valeo, placeo, caret, et licet aufer,
 Paret, item jaceo, calco, noceo, doleoque;
 Queis coalet, latet, atque meret sociabis, oletque.

Dōceo,	docui,	doctum,	to teach.
--------	--------	---------	-----------

¹³ *Duplico*, to double, *multiplīco*, to multiply; *replīco*, to unfold; and *supplīco*, to entreat humbly, have *āvi* and *ātum*. The other Compounds of *plīco* have either *ui* and *itum*, or *āvi* and *ātum*: as, *applīco*, to apply, *applicui*, *applicitum*, or *applicāvi*, *applicātum*. *Explīco*, in the sense of *explain*, has *āvi* and *ātum*; in the sense of *unfold*, it has *ui* and *itum*.

¹ The Compounds of *hābeo* change *a* into *i*: as, *adhībeo*, *adhibui*, *adhibitum*, to admit; *prohībeo*, *prohibui*, *prohibitum*, to forbid. See p. 107, Rule 3.

² The Compounds of *lāteo* want the Supine: as, *delīteo*, *delitui*, to lurk; *perlāteo*, *perlatui*, to lie hid.

³ *Plāceo*, when compounded with *per*, retains *a*; when compounded with *dis*, it changes *a* into *i*: as, *displīceo*, *displīcui*, *displīcītum*, to displease. *Complāceo*, to please, has *complacui*, and *complacītus sum* in the Perfect. See p. 107, Rule 3.

Dat doceo doctum; a teneo deducito tentum;
 Mistum vel mixtum dat misceo; censeo, censum;
 Torreoque et tostum capient; et sorbeo, sorptum.

Tēneo, ⁴	tenui,	tentum,	to hold.
Misceo,	miscui,	{ mistum, or mixtum,	to mix.
Censeo, ⁵	censui,	censum,	to think, to judge
Torreo,	torrui,	tostum,	to roast.
Sorbeo, ⁶	sorbui,	sorptum,	to sup.
Tīmeo,	timui,	————	to fear.
Sīleo,	silui,	————	to be silent.
Arceo, ⁷	arcui,	————	to drive away.
Tāceo, ⁸	tacui,	tacitum,	to be silent.
Prandeo, ⁹	prandi,	pransum,	to dine.
Vīdeo,	vidi,	vīsum,	to see.
Sēdeo, ¹⁰	sēdi,	sessum,	to sit.
Strīdeo,	stridi,	————	to make a noise.
Frendeo,	frendi,	fressum,	to gnash the teeth.
Mordeo, ¹¹	momordi,	morsum,	to bite.
Pendeo,	pendi,	pensum,	to hang.
Spondeo,	sponpodi,	sponsum,	to promise.

⁴ The Compounds of *tēneo* change *e* into *i*: as, *contīneo*, *continui*, *contentum*, to hold together. *Attīneo*, to hold; *pertīneo*, to belong to, and *abstīneo*, to abstain from, have no Supine.

⁵ *Censeo* has also *census sum* in the Perfect, and *censitum* in the Supine. *Accenseo*, to reckon with, and *percenseo*, to recount, want the Supine; and *recenseo*, to review, has *recensum*, and *recensitum*.

⁶ *Absorbeo*, to sup up, and *exsorbeo*, to sup out, have sometimes *absorpsi*, and *exsorpsi* in the Perfect. The latter, with *resorbeo*, to draw back, has no Supine.

Arceo quod simplex nescit, dant nata supinum :
Quod retinent *taceo*, *lateo*, *sobolique* recusant.

⁷ The Compounds of *arceo* have *itum* in the Supine: as, *exerceo*, *exercui*, *exercitum*, to exercise.

⁸ The Compounds of *tāceo* want the Supine: as, *contīceo*, *conticui*, to keep silence; *retīceo*, *reticui*, to remain silent, to conceal.

Dant DI SUM *prandet*, *videt* et *sedet*; at *geminabit*
S *sessum*: *stridet* *stridi* facit absque supino.

⁹ The Participle *pransus* is used in the Active sense of *having dined*.

¹⁰ *Deñdeo*, to sit idle, *dissīdeo*, to disagree, *persīdeo*, to continue, *prañdeo*, to sit before, *reñdeo*, to sit down, to rest, and *subsīdeo*, to subside, want the Supine.

DI SUM *præterito* *geminato* *mordeo* donat :
Spondeo *lege* *pari*, *pendet*, *tondetque* *jugantur*.

¹¹ The Compounds of *mordeo*, *pendeo*, *spondeo*, and *tondeo*, do not double the first syllable of the Perfect. See p. 107, Rule 2. *Impendeo*, to overhang, has no Perfect or Supine.

Tondeo,	totondī,	tonsum,	to clip.
Mōveo, ¹²	mōvi,	mōtum,	to move.
Fōveo,	fōvi,	fōtum,	to cherish.
Vōveo,	vōvi,	vōtum,	to vow.
Fāveo,	fāvi,	fautum,	to favour.
Cāveo,	cāvi,	cautum,	to beware of.
Pāveo,	pāvi,	—	to be afraid.
Ferveo, ¹³	ferbui,	—	to boil.
Conniveo,	connīvi, or -ixi,	—	to wink.
Dēleo,	delēvi,	delētum,	to destroy.
Compleo, ¹⁴	complēvi,	complētum,	to fill.
Fleo,	flēvi,	flētum,	to weep.
Neo,	nēvi,	nētum,	to spin.
Vieo,	viēvi,	viētum,	to hoop a vessel.
Cieo, ¹⁵	(cīvi),	cītum,	to stir up.
Oleo, ¹⁶	olui,	(olītum),	to smell.
Suādeo,	suāsi,	suāsūm,	to advise.
Rīdeo,	rīsi,	rīsūm,	to laugh.

Ex VEO fit VI, TUM : *faveo* sed dicito *fautum*,

Et *caveo*, *cautum*. Mutilantur neutra supinis :

Ferbuit at *fervet* ; VI, XI, *conniveo* donat.

¹² Verbs in *veo* undergo a contraction in the Supine. Neuter Verbs in *veo* want the Supine : as, *pāveo*, *pāvi*, to be afraid.

¹³ *Fervo*, *fervi*, another form of this Verb belonging to the Third Conjugation, is used in a few persons, and in the Present Infinitive.

Deleo, nata *pleo*, *flct*, *net*, *vict*, EVIT et ETUM

Accipiunt, *cioque citum* : *civi* dato quartæ.

Nunc *oleo* per UI dat ITUM : sic *pignora patris*

Quæ retinent sensum : EVI, ETUM vult cætera proles.

Fert *abolevit* ITUM : sed dic *adolevit adultum*.

¹⁴ The other Compounds of the obsolete Verb *pleo* are conjugated in the same way : as, *expleo*, *impleo*, *repleo*, *suppleo*.

¹⁵ *Cīvi* is the Perfect of *cio* of the Fourth Conjugation, having *cītum* in the Supine. The Compounds, in the sense of *calling*, are generally conjugated according to this form : as, *excio*, *excītum*. See p. 107, Rule 4. See also p. 149, Note.

¹⁶ The Compounds of *ōleo* which retain the sense of the Simple Verb have *ui* and *ītum* : as, *obōleo*, *obolui*, *obolītum*, to smell strongly. The Compounds which adopt a different signification have *ēvi* and *ētum* : as, *exōleo*, *exolēvi*, *exolētum*, to fade ; *obsōleo*, *obsolēvi*, *obsolētum*, to grow out of use ; *inōleo*, *inolēvi*, *inolētum*, or *inolītum*, to come into use. *Abōleo*, to abolish, has *abolēvi*, *abolītum* ; and *adōleo*, to grow up, to burn, has *adolēvi*, *adultum*.

Dant Si SUM *suadet*, *ridet*, *manet*, *hæret* et *ardet*,

Et *terget*, *mulcet*, *mulget* : sed et S geminato

Vult *jubeo*, *jussi*, *jussumque*. *Indulgeo* SI TUM,

Torquco dat *torsi* *tortum*. *Viduata* supinis

SI capiunt *urget*, cum *fulget*, *turget* et *alget*.

Māneo,	mansi,	mansum,	to stay.
Hæreo,	hæsi,	hæsum,	to stick.
Ardeo,	arsi,	arsum,	to burn.
Tergeo,	tersi,	tersum,	to wipe.
Mulceo,	mulsi,	mulsum,	to stroke.
Mulgeo,	mulsi,	{ mulsum, or muletum,	to milk.
Jūbeo,	jussi,	jussum,	to order.
Indulgeo,	indulsi,	indultum,	to indulge.
Torqueo,	torsi,	tortum,	to twist.
Augeo,	auxi,	auctum,	to increas.
Urgeo,	ursi,	—	to press.
Fulgeo,	fulsi,	—	to shine.
Turgeo,	tursi,	—	to swell.
Algeo,	alsi,	—	to be cold.
Lūgeo,	luxi,	—	to mourn.
Lūceo,	luxi,	—	to shine.
Frigeo,	frixi,	—	to be cold.

*Lugeo XI solum, cum luceo, frigeo, poscit :
Augeo sic auxi, comitabitur inde sed auctum.*

The following Verbs want both Perfect and Supine :

Aveo, to desire.	Līveo, to be black and blue.
Denseo, to grow thick.	Mæreo, to be sorrowful.
Flāveo, to be yellow.	Renīdeo, to shine.
Glabreo, to be smooth.	Polleo, to be powerful.
Hēbeo, to be blunt.	Scāteo, to flow out.
Lacteo, to grow milky.	

*Nil formant lactet, livet, scateoque renidet,
Mæret, avet, pollet, flavet, cum denseo glabret.*

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Verbs of the Third Conjugation form the Perfect and Supine variously.

IO.

Fācio, ¹	fēci,	factum,	to do, to make.
---------------------	-------	---------	-----------------

*Dat facio, feci, factum : jacio quoque jeci
Accipit, et jactum : specio lacioque creata
Dant XI CTUM : verum elicui dic elicutumque.*

¹ *Fācio*, when compounded with a Preposition, changes *a* into *i*; as, *afficio, affeci, affectum*, to affect. In the other Compounds the *a* is retained. A few Compounds end in *fico*, and *ficor*, and belong to the First Conjugation: as, *amplifico*, to enlarge; *sacrifico*, to sacrifice: *gratifico*, to gratify; and *ludifico*, to mock. See page 63.

Jācio, ²	jēci,	jaetum,	to throw.
Aspīoio,	aspexi,	aspectum,	to behold.
Allīcio,	allexi,	allectum,	to allure.
Fōdio,	fōdi,	fossum,	to dig.
Fūgio,	fūgi,	fugitum,	to fly.
Cāpio, ⁴	cēpi,	captum,	to take.
Rāpio,	rapui,	raptum,	to seize.
Sāpio,	sapui,	—	to taste, to be wise.
Cūpio,	cupīvi,	cupitum,	to desire.
Pārio, ⁵	pēpēri,	{ partum, or paritum,	to bring forth.
Quātio, ⁶	(quassi),	quassum,	to shake.

UO.

Acuo,	acui,	acūtum,	to sharpen.
Arguo,	argui,	argūtum,	to show, to prove.
Batuo,	batui,	batūtum,	to beat.
Exuo,	exui,	exūtum,	to put off clothes.
Imbuo,	imbui,	imbūtum,	to moisten, to wet.
Induo,	indui,	indūtum,	to put on clothes.

² The Compounds of *jācio* change *a* into *i*: as, *abjicio*, *abjēci*, *abjectum*, to throw away. See p. 107, Rule 3.

³ The Compounds of the obsolete Verbs *spēcio*, and *lācio*, have *exi*, and *ectum*; except *ēlicio*, to draw out, which has *elicui*, and *elicitum*.

Dic *fodio*, *fodi*, *fossum*: *fugio* dato *fugi*,
Et *fugitum*: *capio*, *cepi*, *captumque* requirit:
At *rapio*, *rapui*, *raptum*: *viduumque* supino
Dat *sapio*, *sapui*: *cupio* volet *ivit* et *itum*.

⁴ The Compounds of *cāpio*, *rāpio*, and *sāpio*, change *a* into *i*: as, *accipio*, *accēpi*, *acceptum*, to receive; *abripio*, *abripui*, *abreptum*, to carry off; *consipio*, *consipui*, to be in one's senses. See p. 107, Rule 3.

Dat *pario* *peperi*, *partum*, vel ITUM: *quatioque*
Quassum, *vix quassi*; *cussi* at *cussum* bene proles.

⁵ The Compounds of *pārio* have *perui* and *pertum*, and belong to the Fourth Conjugation: as, *apērio*, *aperui*, *apertum*, *aperire*, to open. So *opērio*, to shut, to cover. But *compērio* (which also has a Deponent form in the Present Indicative and Infinitive, *comperior*, *comperiri*), to know a thing for certain, has *compēri*, *compertum*; and *reperio*, to find, has *repēri*, *reperitum*.

⁶ The Compounds of *quatio* take the form *cūtio*, and have *cussi* and *cussum*: as, *concūtio*, to shake violently, *concussi*, *concussum*.

Queis UO dat finem, per UI labuntur, et UTUM.
At *fluo* vult *fluxi*, *fluxum*: *struxi*, *struo*, *structum*.
Vultque *ruo*, *ruitum*: dat UTUM proles tibi solum
Nulla supina dabunt *metuo*, *pluo*, *congruo*, sicut
Annuo, cum sociis; quibus *ingruo*, *respuo* junges.

Mīnuo,	minui,	minūtum,	to lessen.
Spuo, ⁷	spui,	spūtum,	to spit.
Stātuo, ⁸	statui,	statūtum,	to set, to place.
Sternuo,	sternui,	sternūtum,	to sneeze.
Suo,	sui,	sūtum,	to sew, to stitch.
Tribuo,	tribui,	tribūtum,	to give, to divide.
Fluo,	fluxi,	fluxum,	to flow.
Struo,	struxi,	structum,	to build.
Luo, ⁹	lui,	lūtum,	to pay, to wash.
Ruo, ¹⁰	ruī,	ruītum,	to rush, to fall.
Mētuo,	metui,	—	to fear.
Pluo,	plui,	—	to rain.
Congruo,	congrui,	—	to agree.
Ingruo,	ingrui,	—	to assail.
Annuo, ¹¹	annui,	—	to assent.

BO.

Bībo,	bībi,	bibītum,	to drink.
Scābo,	scābi,	—	to scratch.
Lambo,	lambi,	—	to lick.
Scrībo,	scripsi,	scriptum,	to write. [ried.
Nūbo, ¹²	nupsi,	nuptum,	to veil, to be mar-
Glūbo,	—	—	to strip, to flay.

CO.

Dīco,	dixi,	dictum,	to say.
Dūco,	duxī,	ductum,	to lead,
Vinco,	vīci,	victum,	to overcome.

⁷ *Respuo*, to spit out, to reject, has no Supine.

⁸ The compounds of *statuo* change *a* into *i*: as, *constituo*, *constitui*, *constitūtum*, to place. See p. 107, Rule 3.

⁹ The Compounds of *luo* have *ūtum* in the Supine: as, *abluo*, *ablui*, *ablūtum*, to wash away, to purify.

¹⁰ The Compounds of *ruo* have *ūtum* in the Supine: as, *diruo*, *dirui*, *dirūtum*, to overthrow. *Corruo*, to fall together, and *irruo*, to rush in furiously, have no Supine.

¹¹ The other Compounds of the obsolete *nuo*, as *abnuo*, to refuse; *innuo*, to nod with the head: and *renuo*, to deny, likewise want the Supine. *Abnuitūrus*, the Fut. Participle from *abnuo*, is found.

BI BO BITUMque facit. *Scabo*, *lambo* carento supinis:
Orta *cubo*, ternum quibus M dedit indita flexum,
Dant *cubui*, *cubitum*. Vult *scribo*, *nubo*que PSI, PTUM.

¹² *Nupta sum*, another form of the Perfect, is sometimes used instead of *nupsi*.

Dant XI, CTUM *dico*, *duco* simul: Nque remotā
Vult *vinco*, *vici*, *victum*; geminato *pepercī*
A *parco*, *parsum* adjiciens; quod SI dat ITUMque
Rariūs. *Ico* sibi formavit et *icit* et *ictum*.

Parco, ¹³	{ pepercī, or parsī,	{ parsum, or parcītum,	<i>to spare.</i>
Ico,			Ici,

SCO.

Cresco,	crēvi,	crētum,	<i>to grow.</i>
Nosco, ¹⁴	nōvi,	nōtum,	<i>to know.</i>
Quiesco,	quiēvi,	quiētum,	<i>to rest.</i>
Scisco,	scīvi,	scītum,	<i>to ordain.</i>
Suesco,	suēvi,	suētum,	<i>to be accustomed.</i>
Pasco ¹⁵	pāvi,	pastum,	<i>to feed.</i>
Disco, ¹⁶	didīci,	—	<i>to learn.</i>
Posco, ¹⁶	poposci,	—	<i>to demand.</i>
Glisco, ¹⁷	—	—	<i>to glitter, to grow.</i>

DO.

Accendo,	accendi,	accensum,	<i>to kindle.</i>
Cūdo,	cūdi,	cūsum,	<i>to forge.</i>
Defendo, ¹	defendi,	defensum,	<i>to defend.</i>
Edo, ¹⁸	ēdi,	ēsum,	<i>to eat.</i>

¹³ The form *parsi* and *parcītum* is seldom used.

Vertitur in VI, TUM, SCO. *Pasco* dat tibi *pastum*:
Agnosco sed ITUM capiet *cognoscoque*. *Disco*
Vult *didici* primam geminans: sic *posco*, *poposci*;
Dispescit, *compescit* UI dant: cuncta supinis
Orba. Nihil *glisco*, nihil Inceptiva creārunť.

¹⁴ The Fut. Part. is *noscitūrus* from *noscītum*, the old form of the Supine. *Agnosco*, to own, has *agnōvi*, *agnītum*; and *cognosco*, to know, has *cognōvi*, *cognītum*.

¹⁵ *Compesco*, to feed together, to restrain; and *dispesco*, to separate, have *compescui*, and *dispescui*, without the Supine.

¹⁶ See p. 107, Rule 2.

¹⁷ *Fatisco*, to be weary, likewise wants both Perfect and Supine; and also all Inceptive Verbs, unless when they adopt the Tenses of their Primitives: as, *ardesco*, to grow hot, *arsi*, *arsum*. See page 51.

DO finita petunt DI, SUM. Sed *divido*, *rado*,
Dant SI, SUM, *claudio*, *plaudio*, cum *ludere*, *trudo*,
Et *lædo*, *rodo*, *compostaque vado* (quod ipsum
Præteritum vix dat), geminans ac S quodque *cedo*.
At *pando*, *pandi*, *passum pansumque*: *comedi*
Estum sæpe capit; N perdens *fundoque fudi*,
Et *fusum*: sic *scindo*, *scidi*, sic *findo fidi*que;
At *scissum*, *fissum*, duplicans S, redde supinis.

¹⁸ All the Compounds of *ēdo* are conjugated in the same manner, except *comēdo*, to eat up, which has *comēsum*, or *comestum*, in the Supine. See page 63.

Mando,	mandi,	mansum,	to <i>chew</i> .
Prehendo,	prehendi,	prehensum,	to <i>take hold of</i> .
Scando,	scandi,	scansum,	to <i>climb</i> .
Divido,	divīsi,	divisum,	to <i>divide</i> .
Rādo,	rāsi,	rāsum,	to <i>shave</i> .
Claudo, ¹⁹	clausi,	clausum,	to <i>close</i> .
Plaudo, ²⁰	plausi,	plausum,	to <i>applaud</i> .
Lūdo,	lūsi,	lūsum,	to <i>play</i> .
Trūdo,	trūsi,	trūsum,	to <i>thrust</i> .
Lædo, ²¹	læsi,	læsum,	to <i>hurt</i> .
Rōdo,	rōsi,	rōsum,	to <i>gnaw</i> .
Vādo, ²²	—	—	to <i>go</i> .
Cædo,	cessi,	cessum,	to <i>yield</i> .
Pando,	pandi,	{ passum, (r	to <i>open</i> .
Fundo,	fūdi,	{ pansum,	
Scindo,	scīdi,	fūsum,	to <i>pour forth</i> .
Findo,	fīdi,	scissum,	to <i>cut</i> .
Tundo, ²³	tātūdi,	fissum,	to <i>cleave</i> .
Cādo, ²⁴	cecīdi,	{ tunsum, or	to <i>beat</i> .
		{ tūsum,	
		cāsum,	to <i>fall</i> .

¹⁹ The Compounds of *claudo* change *au* into *u*: as, *conclūdo*, *conclūsi*, *conclūsum*, to conclude. *Circumclaudo* is found in Cæsar.

²⁰ The Compounds of *plaudo*, except *ap-* and *circum-plaudo*, change *au* into *o*: as, *explōdo*, *explōsi*, *explōsum*, to reject.

²¹ The Compounds of *lædo* change *æ* into *i*: as, *allīdo*, *allīsi*, *allīsum*, to dash against.

²² The Compounds of *vādo* have the Perfect and Supine: as, *evādo*, *evāsi*, *evāsum*, to escape.

Tundo facit *tutudi tunsum*, *compostaque tusum*.

Et *cado* vult *cecīdi casum*: sed nata supinum

(*Incido* si demas, *recido*, simul *occido*) spernunt.

Cædo cecidit habet *cæsum*: sic *tendo*, *tetendi*,

Tensum vel *tentum*; mage *tentum* sed dato proli:

Vultque *pepedit*, ITUM, *pedo*: *pensumque pependi*,

Pendo capit: DIDIT atque DITUM cum *vendere*, *credo*,

Et prope cuncta sibi quæ DO cum præposituris

Gignit: at *abscondo* potius DIT quàm DIDIT effert.

Præterito DI *strido*, *rudo* dant, absque supinis,

*Sido*que, sed soboli *sedeo* dat mutuò *sedī*.

²³ The Compounds of *tundo* have *tūdi*, and *tūsum*: as, *contundo*, to bruise, *contūdi*, *contūsum*. See Rule 2, page 107. Some of the Compounds have also a Perfect Participle formed from *tunsum*: as, *obtunsus*, and *retunsus*, from *obtundo*, and *retundo*.

²⁴ The Compounds of *cādo* want the Supine: as, *accīdo*, *accīdi*, to happen; except *incīdo*, *incīdi*, *incāsum*, to fall in; *occīdo*, *occīdi*, *oc-cāsum*, to fall down; and *recīdo*, *recīdi*, *recāsum*, to fall back.

Cædo, ²⁵	cecīdi,	cæsum,	to cut, to kill.
Tendo, ²⁶	tetendi,	{ tensum, or tentum,	to stretch.
Pendo,	pependi,	pensum,	to hang.
Crædo, ²⁷	credīdi,	credītum,	to believe.
Vendo,	vendīdi,	vendītum,	to sell.
Abscondo,	abscondi,	absconditum,	to hide.
Strīdo,	strīdi,	—	to creak.
Rudo,	rūdi,	—	to bray as an ass.
Sido, ²⁸	sīdi,	—	to sink down.

GO.

Cingo,	cinxi,	cinctum,	to surround.
Flīgo, ²⁹	fixi,	fictum,	to dash.
Jungo,	ju.xi,	junctum,	to join.
Lingo,	linxi,	linctum,	to lick.
Mungo,	munxi,	munctum,	to wipe the nose.
Plango,	planxi,	planetum,	to beat.
Rēgo, ³⁰	re xi,	rectum,	to rule.

²⁵ The Compounds of *cædo* change *æ* into *i*: as, *accīdo*, *accīdi*, *accīsum*, to cut about; *decīdo*, *decīdi*, *decīsum*, to cut off. *Percīdo*, to cut in pieces, has *percīdi*, and *percecīdi*, in the Perfect.

²⁶ The Compounds of *tendo* have generally *tentum* in the Supine, except *extendo*, to stretch out, and *ostendo*, to show, which have also *tensum*; the latter, almost always.

²⁷ The other Compounds of *do* which belong to the Third Conjugation have also *tidī* and *dītum*: as, *condo*, *condīdi*, *condītum*, to build. *Abscondo* has sometimes *abscondīdi*. See page 108, note 1.

²⁸ The Compounds of *sido* adopt the Perfect and Supine of *sedeo*: as, *consīdo*, *consēdi*, *consessum*, to sit down.

GO vel GUO, XI, CTUMque facit. Cum *surgere*, *pergo*

Accipit at REXI, RECTUM. Sed et ista supinis

N tria deperdunt, *fringo*, cum *pingere*, *stringo*.

Dat *frango*, *fregi*, *fractum*; sicut *egit* et *actum*

Vult *ago*; sed *soboles*, *satago*, cum *prodigo*, *dego*,

Nulla supina dabunt; caret *ambigo* præteritoque.

Tango facit *tetigi*, *tactum*: *legi*, *lego*, *lectum*:

Negligo sed *pascunt*, *intelligo*, *diligio*, XI, CTUM.

Pungo capit *pupugi*, *punctum*, sed *pignora* *punxi*:

Præteritum sed utrumque petit sibi ritè *repungo*.

Vult *pango*, *panxi*, *factum*; *pepigique* *vetustum*

Dat *pago*, quod *pegi* genitis de *pango* reservat.

²⁹ The Compounds of *stigo* are conjugated in the same way, except *proffigo*, to dash down, which is a regular Verb of the First Conjugation.

³⁰ The Compounds of *rēgo* change *e* into *i*: as, *dirīgo*, *dirēxi*, *directum*, to direct; *corrīgo*, *corrēxi*, *correctum*, to correct.

Stinguo, ³¹	stinxi,	stinctum,	to dash out.
Sūgo,	suxi,	suctum,	to suck.
Těgo,	texi,	tectum,	to cover.
Tinguo,	tinxi,	tinctum,	to dip.
Unguo,	unxi,	unctum,	to anoint.
Surgo,	surrexi,	surrectum,	to rise.
Pergo,	perrexi,	perrectum,	to go forward.
Stringo,	strinxi,	strictum,	to bind.
Fingo,	finxi,	fictum,	to feign.
Pingo,	pinxi,	pictum,	to paint.
Frango, ³²	frēgi,	fractum,	to break.
Ago, ³³	ēgi,	actum,	to do, to drive.
Tango,	tetigi,	tactum,	to touch.
Lěgo, ³⁴	lēgi,	lectum,	to gather, to read.
Pungo, ³⁵	pupūgi,	punctum,	to prick.
Pango, ³⁶	panxi,	pactum,	to drive in.
Spargo, ³⁷	sparsi,	sparsum,	to spread.
Mergo,	mersi,	mersum,	to dip, to plunge.
Tergo,	tersi,	tersum,	to wipe.
Fīgo,	fixi,	fixum,	to fix.

³¹ *Stinguo, tinguo, and unguo*, are also written *stingo, tingo, ungo*.

³² The Compounds of *frango* and *tango* change *a* into *i*: as, *confringo, confrēgi, confractum*, to break to pieces; *atingo, attingi, at-tactum*, to touch gently.

³³ *Circumāgo*, to drive round; *perāgo*, to finish; and *coāgo* (contracted *cōgo*), to collect, retain the *a*: the other Compounds change *a* into *i*: as, *abigo, abēgi, abactum*, to drive away. *Dēgo* (for *dāgo*), to live, to dwell: *prodigo*, to lavish or squander; and *satāgo*, to be busy, want the Supine. *Ambigo*, to doubt, has neither Perfect nor Supine.

³⁴ *Lěgo*, when compounded with *ad, per, prae, re, and sub*, retains the *e*: as, *allēgo*, to choose. The other Compounds change *e* into *i*: as, *colligo*, to collect. *Diligo*, to love; *intelligo*, to understand, and *negligo*, to neglect, have *exi*, and *ectum*. *Negligo* has sometimes *neglēgi* in the Perfect.

³⁵ The Compounds of *pungo* have *punxi* in the Perfect: as, *compungo*, to sting, *compunxi, compunctum*.

³⁶ *Pango*, in the sense of *bargain*, has *pepiggi*; the Present is rarely used in this meaning; but instead of it *paciscor* is commonly employed. The Compounds which change *a* into *i* have *pēgi*, and *pactum*: as, *compingo*, to fasten together, *compēgi, compactum*. *Op-pango*, to fasten to, has also *pēgi* and *pactum*. Of the other Compounds which retain *a*, the Perfect and Supine are not found.

Dant SI, SUM *spargo, mergo, tergoque*. Requirit
At XI, XUM *figo cum frigere: nec male frictum*
Invenies quandoque datum. Nil *vergo* capessit.
XI *clango, ningo* dat et *ango*, supinaque nulla.

³⁷ The Compounds of *spargo* change *a* into *e*: as, *aspergo, aspersi, aspersum*, to besprinkle.

Frigo,	frixi,	{ frixum, or frictum,	to fry.
Vergo,	—	—	to lie toward.
Clango,	clanxi,	—	to sound a drum.
Ningo,	ninxi,	—	to snow. [pet.
Ango,	anxi,	—	to vex.

HO.

Trāho,	traxi,	tractum,	to draw.
Vēho,	vexi,	vectum,	to carry.
Mejo, ³⁸	minxi,	mictum,	to make water.

LO.

Cōlo, ³⁹	colui,	cultum,	to till, to inhabit.
Consūlo.	consului,	consultum,	to consult.
Alo,	alui,	{ alitum, or altum,	to nourish.
Mōlo,	molui,	molitum,	to grind.
Antecello, ⁴⁰	antecellui,	—	to excel.
Pello,	pepūli,	pulsum,	to drive away.
Fallo, ⁴¹	fefelli,	falsum,	to deceive.
Vello, ⁴²	velli, or vulsi,	vulsum,	to pull.
Sallo,	salli,	salsum,	to salt. [strument.
Psallo,	psalli,	—	to play on an in-

Postulat HO, XI, CTUM. *Minxi, mictum* cape *mejo*.

Mingo is also used as the Present of *minxi*.

LO, LUIT efformat : *colo, consulit, occulit, ULTUM*.

Ast *alo* dic *altum*, vel ITUM : *molitum molo* donat.

Nulla supina manent genitis de *cello* : sed unum

Excipe *percello*, quod *perculit* optat et ULSUM.

Pello facit *pepuli, pulsum* ; *falloque fefelli*,

Et *falsum*. *Velli* vel *vulsi, vello* reposcit,

Inde petens *vulsum* : *sallo, salli*, quòque *salsum*.

At *psallo, psalli*, tantum : pariterque supinis

Deficiunt *malo, volo, nolo, junge refello*.

More sed insolito dat *tollo sustulit*, atque

Sublatum ; *attollo* proles sed nil sibi quærit.

³⁹ *Cōlo*, when compounded with *ob*, changes *o* into *u* : as, *occālo*, to hide. *Accōlo*, to dwell near, and *circumcōlo*, to dwell round, have no Supine.

⁴⁰ The other Compounds of the obsolete *cello* likewise want the Supine ; except *percello, perculi, perculsum*, to strike, to astonish. *Recello* likewise wants the Perfect.

⁴¹ *Refello, refelli*, to confute, wants the Supine.

⁴² *Vello*, when compounded with *de, di, or per*, has usually *velli* in the Perfect. The other Compounds take either form indifferently.

Tollo, ⁴³	sustūli,	sublātum,	to lift up.
MO.			
Frēmo,	fremui,	fremītum,	to rage, to roar.
Gěmo,	gemui,	gemītum,	to groan.
Vōmo,	vomui,	vomītum,	to vomit.
Trěmo,	tremui,	—	to tremble.
Děmo, ⁴⁴	dempsi,	demptum,	to take away.
Prōmo,	prompsi,	promptum,	to bring out.
Sūmo,	sumpsi,	sumptum,	to take.
Cōmo,	compși,	comptum,	to deck, to dress.
Emo, ⁴⁴	ēmi,	emptum,	to buy.
Prěmo, ⁴⁵	pressi,	pressum,	to press.
NO.			
Pōno,	pōsui,	positum,	to place.
Gigno,	genui,	genītum,	to beget.
Cāno, ⁴⁶	cecīni,	cantum,	to sing.
Temno, ⁴⁷	—	—	to despise.
Sperno,	sprēvi,	sprētum,	to disdain.
Sterno, ⁴⁸	strāvī,	strātum,	to lay flat.
Sīno,	sīvi, or sii,	sītum,	to permit.

⁴³ *Attollo* and *extollo*, to raise up, have no Perfect or Supine of their own; but those of *affĕro* and *effĕro*, which agree with them in meaning, are sometimes assigned to them.

MO per UI dat ITUM. *Tremo* flectitur absque supino.

Dant PSI, PTUM, *demo*, *promo*, cum *sumere*, *como*;

Emi, *emptum* sed *emo* capiet, *pressi*, *premo*, *pressum*.

⁴⁴ *Děmo*, *prōmo*, and *sūmo*, are Compounds of *emo*. The other Compounds change *e* into *i*, and are conjugated like the Simple Verb: as, *adĕmo*, *adĕmi*, *ademptum*, to take away.

⁴⁵ The Compounds of *prěmo* change *e* into *i*: as, *comprĕmo*, *compressi*, *compressum*, to press together.

Pono facit *posui*, *positum*: *genui*, *genitumque*

Gigno creat: *cecini*, *cantum*, *cano* poscit; habeto

Sed CINUI, CENTUM proles. Prope nil sibi servans,

Temno dedit nato PSI, PTUM. Vult *spernoque sprevi*,

Et *spretum*; *sterno*, *stravi*, *stratum*: *sino*, *sivi*,

Atque *situm*; *livi*, *levive*, *litum*, *lino*; *cerno*

Dat *crevi*, *cretumque*, magis quæ nata frequentant.

⁴⁶ The Compounds of *cāno* have *cinui*, and *centum*: as, *conciĕno*, *concinui*, *concentum*, to sing in concert. Of *accĕno*, to sing to, and *interciĕno*, to sing between, or during, no Perfect or Supine is found.

⁴⁷ *Contemno*, to despise, has *contempsi*, *contemptum*.

⁴⁸ *Consterno* and *externo*, when they signify to alarm, are regular Verbs of the First Conjugation. The other Compounds are conjugated like *sterno*: as, *insterno*, *instrāvī*, *instrātum*, to spread upon.

Lino,	livi, or lēvi,	lītum,	to anoint.
Cerno, ⁴⁹	crēvi,	crētum,	to see, to decree.

PO, QUO.

Carpō, ⁵⁰	carpsi,	carptum,	to pluck.
Clēpō,	clepsi,	cleptum,	to steal.
Rēpō,	repsi,	reptum,	to creep.
Scalpō,	scalpsi,	scalptum,	to engrave.
Sculpō,	sculpsi,	sculptum,	to carve.
Serpō,	serpsi,	serptum,	to creep.
Strēpō,	strepui,	strepitum,	to make a noise.
Rumpō,	rūpi,	ruptum,	to break.
Coquo,	coxi,	coctum,	to boil.
Linquo, ⁵¹	liqui,	—	to leave.

RO.

Quæro, ⁵²	quæsiui,	quæsitum,	to seek.
Tēro,	trivi,	tritum,	to wear.
Verro,	verri,	versum,	to sweep.
Uro,	ussi,	ustum,	to burn.
Curro, ⁵³	cucurri,	cursum,	to run.
Gēro,	gessi,	gestum,	to carry.
Fūro, ⁵⁴	—	—	to be mad.

⁴⁹ The Perfect *crēvi* is used in the sense of *to declare one's self heir, or enter on an inheritance*. In the sense of *seeing, cerno* has properly neither Perfect nor Supine.

PO, PSI, PTUMque facit. *Strepo* vult *strepui, strepitumque* :
At rumpo, rupi, ruptum. Coquo flectito XI, CTUM.
Linquo tenet *liqui tantum, compositaque lictum*.

⁵⁰ The Compounds of *carpo* change *a* into *e* : as, *discerpo, discerpsi, discerptum*, to tear in pieces.

⁵¹ The Compounds of *linquo* have *lictum* in the Supine : as, *relinquo, reliqui, relictum*, to forsake ; so *delinquo*, to fail.

Quæro, quæsiui, quæsitum dat : *terō, trivī,*
Et tritum : *verro, verri, versumque* requirit :
Uro, ussi ac *ustum* : *cursum* vult *curro, cucurri* :
Flecte gero, gessi, gestum : *latumque tulique*
 Dat *fero* : præteritum nullum *furo, suffero* nōrunt :
 A *sero* fit *scvique satum* : sic EVIT, ITUMque
 Dant composita quibus plantandi significatus
 Inditur ; at SERUI, SERTUM vult cætera proles.

⁵² The Compounds of *quæro* change *æ* into *i* : as, *acquiro, acquisiui, acquisitum*, to acquire.

⁵³ *Curro*, when compounded with *circum, re, sub,* and *trans*, seldom takes the reduplication. The other Compounds sometimes take the reduplication, and sometimes not. See p. 107, Rule 2.

⁵⁴ See page 66.

Sĕro, ⁵⁵	sĕvi,	sĕtum,	to sow.
SO.			
Arcesso,	arcessĭvi,	arcessĭtum,	to call, or send for.
Capesso,	capessĭvi,	capessĭtum,	to take.
Facesso,	facessĭvi,	facessĭtum,	to do, to go away.
Lacesso,	laccessĭvi,	laccessĭtum,	to provoke.
Viso,	visĭ,	—	to go to visit.
Incesso,	incessi,	—	to attack.
Depso,	depsui,	depstum,	to knead.
Pinso,	{ pinsui, or pinsi,	{ pinsum, pistum, or pinsĭtum,	to bake.
TO.			
Flecto,	flexi,	flexum,	to bend.
Plecto,	plexi & plexui,	plexum,	to plait.
Necto,	nexi & nexui,	nexum,	to tie, or knit.
Pecto,	pexi & pexui,	pexum,	to dress, or comb.
Mĕto,	messui,	messum,	to reap.
Pĕto,	petĭvi,	petĭtum,	to seek.
Mitto,	misĭ,	missum,	to send.
Verto, ⁵⁶	verti,	versum,	to turn.
Sterto,	stertui,	—	to snore.
Sisto, ⁵⁷	stĭti,	stĭtum,	to stop.

⁵⁵ The Compounds of *sĕro* which retain the sense of *planting* and *sowing*, have *sĕvi* and *sĭtum*: as, *consĕro*, *consĕvi*, *consĭtum*, to plant together. Those which adopt a different signification have *serui* and *sertum*: as, *assĕro*, *asserui*, *assertum*, to claim. The latter class of Compounds properly belongs to the old verb *sĕro*, to knit, to plait.

SO, SIVI, SITUMque capit: sed trunca supinis
 SI *viso*, *incesso* retinent: at *depso* reposcit
Depsuit et *depstum*. *Pinso* dat *pinsuit* atque
Pinsit, et hinc *pinsum*, *pistum* formabit ITUMque.

Flecto XI, XUM vult: sic *plecto*, *nectoque*, *pecto*:
 Quæ XUIT et pariter formant. *Meto* sed geminans S
Messui et *messum*: *peto* suscipit IVIT, et ITUM:
 At *mitto*, *misĭ*, *missum* dat: *vertoque* *verti*,
 Et *versum*: *sterto* vult *stertuit*, absque supino.
Sisto, *stĭtique*, *statum* dat agens: neutrale sequetur
Sto verbum, unde STITI, atque STITUM composita tulerunt.

⁵⁶ The Compounds of *verto* are conjugated in the same manner, except *revertor*, to return, which is often used as a Deponent Verb; and *divertor*, to turn aside, and *prævertor*, to outrun, which are likewise Deponent, but want the Perfect Participle.

⁵⁷ *Sisto*, to stand still (a neuter verb), has neither Perfect nor Supine. The Compounds have *stĭti*, and *stĭtum*: as, *assisto*, *astĭti*, *astĭtum*, to stand by. But these are seldom found in the Supine.

VO, XO.

Vivo,	vixi,	victum,	to live.
Solvo,	solvi,	solūtum,	to loose.
Volvo,	volvi,	volūtum,	to roll.
Texo,	texui,	textum,	to weave.

Dat vivo XI, CTUM : solvo VI format et UTUM,
Ut volvo. Texo vult texuit, indeque textum.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

RULE.—Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation have *īvi* in the Perfect, and *ītum* in the Supine : as,

Audio,	audīvi,	audītum,	to hear.
Mūnio,	munīvi,	munītum,	to fortify.

EXCEPTIONS.

Singultio,	singultīvi,	singultum,	to sob.
Sepēlio,	sepelīvi,	sepultum,	to bury.
Vēnio,	vēni,	ventum,	to come.
Vēneo, ¹	venii,	—	to be sold.
Sālio, ²	salui, or salii,	saltum,	to leap.
Amīcio,	{ amicui, or amixi,	amicum,	to clothe.
Vincio,	vinxi,	vinctum,	to tie.
Sancio,	{ sanxi, or sancīvi,	{ sanctum, or sancītum,	to ratify.
Cambio,	campsi,	campsum,	to change money.

Singultit vult *singultum*, *sepelitque sepultum* :

Dat *venio*, *veni*, *ventum* : sed *veneo* solum

Veniit efficit : *salio*, *salui*, *saliique*,

Extulit, et *saltum* : capiunt at *pignora sultum*.

¹ For the Conjugation of *veneo*, see page 59.

² The Compounds of *sālio* have generally *silui*, sometimes *silii*, or *silīvi*, in the Perfect, and *sultum* in the Supine : as, *transīlio*, *transīlui*, *transīlii*, or *transīlīvi*, *transultum*, to leap over. *Absultum*, *circumsultum*, and *prosultum*, are scarcely used. See p. 107, Rule 3.

Vult *amicit* vel UI, vel XI, CTUM : *vincio* XI, CTUM.

Sancio jungatur, quod et IVI format, et ITUM.

Cambio vult PSI, PSUM : sed *sepsi*, *sepio*, *septum* :

Haurio SI, STUM dat ; SUM rariùs effer. Habebit

Sentio sed *sensi*, *sensum* : sic, *raucio*, *rausi*,

Et *rausum* : *sarcit*, *farcit*, cum *fulcio*, SI, TUM.

At PERUI, PERTUMque sibi composita jugârunt

Ex *pario* ternæ : RI *comperit* et *reperit* vult.

Sēpio,	sepsi,	septum,	to enclose.
Haurio,	hausi,	{haustum, or hausum,	to draw out.
Sentio,	sensi,	sensum,	to feel.
Raucio,	rausi,	rausum,	to be hoarse.
Sarcio,	sarsi,	sartum,	to mend, or repair.
Farcio, ³	farsi,	fartum,	to cram.
Fulcio,	fulsi,	fultum,	to prop.
Fērio,	—	—	to strike.

The following Verbs have the Perfect formed regularly, but want the Supine :

Cæcütio, to be dim-sighted.	Gestio, to show one's joy by the gestures of the body.
Dementio, to be mad.	Glöcio, to cluck as a hen.
Feröcio, to be fierce.	Ineptio, to play the fool.

Cæcutit, gestit, glocit, et dementit, ineptit,
Nulla supina dabunt, cum prosilit atque ferocit.

For Desiderative Verbs which belong to this Conjugation, See page 51.

For the Compounds of *pario*, which belong to this Conjugation, See page 114, Note 5.

DEPONENT AND COMMON VERBS.

RULE.—Deponent and Common Verbs form the Perfect Participle in the same manner as if the Active Voice existed. See pages 51 and 52.

Note.—All Deponent Verbs seem to have been originally Passives. Hence there are many Verbs which, though found in the Active Voice, are used deponently in the Passive; others, under the name of Common Verbs, have become obsolete in the Active, and, in the Passive, are employed either as Deponents or Passives; and many which have laid aside their Passive signification in the other Tenses, still retain it in the Perfect Participle.

Exceptions in the Second Conjugation.

Reor,	rätus,	rēri,	to think.
Misereor, ¹	misertus,	miserēri,	to pity.
Fäteor, ²	fassus,	fatēri,	to confess.
Medeor,	—	medēri,	to heal.

³ The Compounds of *farcio* change *a* into *e*: as, *refercio, refersi, refertum*, to fill up.

Nam *ratus a reor* est; *misereri* vultque *misertus*;
 Et *fateor, fassus*: FESSUS sed reddito proli.

¹ *Miscreor* has also *miseritus* in the Perfect Participle.

² The Compounds of *fäteor* change *a* into *i*, and have *fessus*; as,

Exceptions in the Third Conjugation.

Lābor,	lapsus,	labi,	to slide.
Ulciscor,	ultus,	ulcisci,	to revenge.
Utor,	ūsus,	ūti,	to use.
Lōquor, ³	loquūtus,	loqui,	to speak.
Sēquor,	sequūtus,	sequi,	to follow.
Quēror,	questus,	queri,	to complain.
Nītor, ⁴	nīsus, or nixus,	niti,	to strive.
Paciscor,	pactus,	pacisci,	to bargain.
Grādior,	gressus,	gradi,	to go.
Proficiscor,	profectus,	proficisci,	to go a journey.
Nanciscor,	nactus,	nancisci,	to obtain.
Pātior,	passus,	pati,	to suffer.
Apiscor, ⁵	aptus,	apisci,	to get.
Comminiscor,	commentus,	comminisci,	to devise.
Fruor,	frūitus, or fructus,	frui,	to enjoy.
Obliviscor,	oblītus,	oblivisci,	to forget.
Expergiscor,	experrectus,	expergisci,	to awake.
Mōrior, ⁶	mortuus,	mori,	to die.
Nascor, ⁷	nātus,	nasci,	to be born.
Orior, ⁸	ortus,	orīri,	to rise.

confiteor, confessus, to confess. Diffiteor, to deny, wants the Perf. Participle.

Insuper a labor lapsus sibi tertia format :

Ultus ab ulciscor manat : venit usus ab utor ;

Vult UTUS loquor atque sequor : queror accipe questus,

Nisus vel nixus nitor, pactusque paciscor ;

Dat gradior gressus ; proficiscor funde profectus ;

Nanciscor nactus, patior passusque requirit ;

Aptus apiscor habet ; commentus comqueminiscor

Accipit : at fructus pariter frūitusque jugari

Vult fruor : oblītus sed et obliviscor adoptat ;

Ast expergiscor cupit experrectus habere.

Mortuus aq̄e mori est, natus nasci, ortus oriri :

Queis tribus extremis per ITURUS flecte Futurum.

³ Lōquor and sēquor have likewise locūtus and secūtus in the Perfect Participle.

⁴ Nītor, when compounded with *con, in, ob, re, sub*, has *nixus* oftener than *nīsus*. *Adnītor*, to lean to, has either indifferently. *Enītor*, in the sense of *to bring forth*, generally takes *enixa* in the Participle.

⁵ *Adipiscor* and *indipiscor*, to obtain, have *adeptus* and *indeptus*.

⁶ *Morior* seems to have originally belonged to the Fourth Conjugation. The Infinitive *morīri* occurs in Plautus and Ovid ; and *morīmur*, with the penult long, is also found. The Imperative is *morēre*. This verb, with *nascor* and *orior*, has *ītūrus* in the Fut. Part. : as, *morītūrus, nascītūrus, orītūrus*.

⁷ *Nascor* is Passive in signification, but has no Active Voice.

⁸ *Orior* has *orīre*, and always *orirētur* in the Imperfect Subjunc-

The following Verbs want the Perfect Participle :

Defetiscor, -i, to be weary.	Reminiscor, -i, to remember.
Irascor, -i, to be angry.	Ringor, -i, to grin like a dog.
Liquor, -i, to melt.	Vescor, -i, to feed.

Nil formant *vescor, liquor, medeor, reminiscor, Irascor, ringor, prævertor, diffiteorque* :
 Queis demum adjungas *divertor, dequefctiscor*.

Exceptions in the Fourth Conjugation.

Mëtior,	mensus,	metiri,	to measure.
Ordior,	orsus,	ordiri,	to begin.
Experior,	expertus,	experiri,	to try.
Opperior,	oppertus,	opperiri,	to wait for.

Mëtior in quartâ *mensus* dabit, *ordior* *orsus* ;
Experior PERTUS, simul *opperiorque* tenebunt.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.—See page 66.

1. There are only ten real Impersonal Verbs, and these are all of the Second Conjugation. Six of them have a double Perfect, one Active, and the other Passive : as,

Libet, it pleases,	libuit, or libitum est.
Licet, it is lawful,	licuit, or licitum est.
Misēret, it pities,	miseruit, or misertum est.
Piget, it irks,	piguit, or pigitum est.
Pūdet, it shames,	puduit, or puditum est.
Tædet, it wearies,	tæduit, or pertæsum est.

The others form the Perfect regularly : as, *dēcet*, it becomes ; *oportet*, it behoves ; *pænitet*, it repents ; and *liquet*, it appears, which is scarcely used in the Perfect.

2. There are besides a great many Verbs of all the Conjugations, both Active and Passive, which are used Impersonally in the Third Pers. Sing., sometimes with a slight change of signification : as,

First Conj. *Spectat, vacat, stat, constat* ; *datur, pugnātur, statur*.

Second Conj. *Appāret, pertinet, debet, dolet, nocet* ; *placet, displicet, favētur, nocētur*.

Third Conj. *Contingit, incipit, condūcit, desinit, curritur*.

Fourth Conj. *Convēnit, evēnit, expēdit, venitur, itur*.

Also Irregular Verbs : as, *est, obest, fit, præterit, nequit*.

3. Those Verbs which denote the operations and appearances of nature are also Impersonals : as, *fulgurat, fulminat, tonat, pluit*.

tive, according to the Fourth Conjugation. Likewise in the Compounds *adorirētur, exorirētur* ; and not *adorerētur, exorerētur*. The Present follows the Third, though *oriris* and *oritur*, with the penult long, are also found.

REDUNDANT VERBS.

Redundant Verbs are those which have different forms to express the same sense: as, *assentio* and *assentior*, to agree; *fabrīco* and *fabrīcor*, to frame; *mereo* and *mereor*, to deserve. The Passive form of these Verbs is also used in a Passive sense.

1. Some Verbs are usually of the First Conjugation and rarely of the Third: as,

Lavo, lavas, lavāre, and lavo, lavis, lavēre, to wash.

Sono, sonas, sonāre, and sono, sonis, sonēre, to sound.

2. Some are usually of the Second and rarely of the Third: as,

Ferveo, ferves, fervēre, and fervo, fervis, fervēre, to boil.

Fulgeo, fulges, fulgēre, and fulgo, fulgis, fulgēre, to shine.

Strideo, strides, stridēre, and strido, stridis, stridēre, to creak.

Tergeo, terges, tergēre, and tergo, tergis, tergēre, to wipe.

Tueor, tuēris, tuēri, and tuor, tuēris, tui, to descend.

3. Some are usually of the Third and rarely of the Fourth: as,

Arcesso, arcessis, arcessēre, and arcessio, arcessire, to send for.

Fodio, fodis, fodēre, and fodio, fodis, fodire, to dig.

Sallo, sallis, sallēre, and sallio, sallis, sallire, to salt.

Morior, morēris, mori, and morior, moriris, moriri, to die.

Orior, orēris, and orior, oriris, oriri, to rise.

Potior, potēris, and potior, potiris, potiri, to obtain.

Note.—*Orior* and *potior* are always of the Fourth Conjugation in the Infinitive.

There is also one Verb which is usually of the Second and more rarely of the Fourth: *cieo*, *cies*, *ciere*, and *cio*, *cis*, *cire*, to stir up.—See page 112, Note 15.

FIGURES OF SPEECH.

The Figures of Speech are included in the following lines:

PROSTHESIS *apponit capiti*, sed APHÆRESIS *aufert*.

SYNCOPE *de medio tollit*, sed EPENTHESIS *addit*.

Abstrahit APOCOPE *fini*, sed dat PARAGOGÈ.

Constringit CRASIS, distracta DIÆRESIS *effert*.

Litera *si legitur transposta*, METATHESIS *exiit*.

ANTITHESIN *dices, tibi litera si varietur*.

FIGURATIVE SYNTAX.

Figurative Syntax comprehends those forms of expression which cannot be reduced to any of the general rules.

I. ELLIPSIS.

Ellipsis is the omission of one or more words necessary to com-

plete the regular Syntax : as, *Aberant bidui*, sup. *iter* ; *Expleri mentem nequit*, sup. *secundum*, or *quod ad* ; *Et genus, et virtus, nisi cum re vilior algá est*, sup. *vilius* ; *Caper tibi salvus, et hædi*, sup. *salvi*.

II. PLEONASM.

Pleonasm is the redundance of one or more words not necessary to complete the sense : as, *Oculis vidi* ; *Sic ore locutus est* ; *Pateris libamus et auro*, for *aureis pateris* ; *Urbs Troja*, for *Troja*.

III. ENALLAGE.

Enalláge is the change or substitution of one number, case, tense, &c. for another : as, *Vestra indicatio est*, for *vestrum indicare* ; *Populum late regem*, for *reguantem* ; *Scelus*, for *scelestus* ; *Romanus*, for *Romani* ; *Expediti militum*, for *milites* ; *Dare classibus austros*, for *classes austris*.

IV. HYPERBATON.

Hyperbáton is the violation of the common arrangement of words in a sentence : as, *Italiam contra*, for *contra Italiam* ; *Valet atque vivit*, for *vivit atque valet* ; *Saxa vocant Itali mediis quæ in fluctibus Aras*, for *quæ saxa in mediis fluctibus Itali vocant Aras* ; *Adco super unus eram*, for *supereram*.

RULES FROM RUDDIMAN'S GRAMMAR.

I. RULES FOR THE GENDER OF NOUNS.

I. GENERAL RULES.

1. QUÆ maribus solùm tribuuntur, mascula sunt.

Names of Males, and Nouns referring to the Male Sex, are Masculine: as, *Homērus*, Homer; *pater*, a father; *Tros*, a Trojan; *fur*, a thief; *Mars*, the god of war; *equus*, a horse.

2. Esto femineum, quod femina sola reposit.

Names of Females, and Nouns referring to the Female Sex, are Feminine: as, *Helēna*, Helen; *mater*, a mother; *Troas*, a Trojan woman; *Venus*, the goddess of love; *equa*, a mare.

3. Sit commune duùm, sexum quod signat utrumque.

Nouns denoting either the Male or Female Sex are of the Common Gender: as, *parens*, a parent; *canis*, a dog, or bitch.

The following lines comprehend nearly all the Nouns of the Common Gender:

Conjux atque parens, infans, patruelis et hæres,
Affinis, vindex, judex, dux, miles et hostis,
Augur et antistes, juvenis, conviva, sacerdos,
Municeps, vates, adolescens, civis et auctor.
Custos, nemo, comes, testis, sus, bosque, canisque,
Interpresque, cliens, princeps, præ, martyr et obses,
Atque index, hospes, queis adde satelles et exsul.

Conjux, a husband, or wife; *parens*, a parent; *infans*, an infant; *patruelis*, a cousin by the father's side; *hæres*, an heir, or heiress; *affinis*, a relation by marriage; *vindex*, an avenger; *judex*, a judge; *dux*, a leader; *miles*, a soldier; *hostis*, an enemy; *augur*, a soothsayer; *antistes*, a high-priest; *juvenis*, a young man, or woman; *conviva*, a guest; *sacerdos*, a priest, or priestess; *municeps*, a burgess; *vates*, a prophet; *adolescens*, a young man, or woman; *civis*, a citizen; *auctor*, an author; *custos*, a keeper; *nemo*, nobody; *comes*, a companion; *testis*, a witness; *sus*, a swine; *bos*, an ox, or cow; *canis*, a dog, or bitch; *interpres*, an interpreter; *cliens*, a client; *princeps*, a prince, or princess; *præ*, a surety; *martyr*, a martyr; *obses*, a hostage; *index*, an informer; *hospes*, a stranger; *satelles*, a life-guardsmen; *exsul*, an exile.

4. *Multa, quibus sexus promiscuus, unaque vox est, Nomina sunt, quorum genus est a fine petendum.*

Some Nouns, referring to both Sexes, have their Gender regulated by their terminations: as, *passer*, a sparrow, Masc. because Nouns in *er* are Masculine; *aquīla*, an eagle, Fem. because Nouns in *a* of the First Declension are Feminine. This class of Nouns includes many names of wild beasts, and the names of most birds, fishes, and insects. Difference of sex is indicated by the words *mas* and *femina*: as, *mas passer*; *femina passer*.

Such Nouns are said to be of the *Epicæne* Gender.

5. *Menses cum Ventis generi conjunge virili.*

Names of Months and Winds are Masculine: as, *Aprīlis*, April; *Aquīlo*, the north-wind; *Eurus*, the east-wind.

6. *Masculum Fluvii nomen Montisque repone: Sæpe tamen norma est finalis syllaba utrique.*

Names of Rivers and Mountains are Masculine: as, *Tibēris*, the Tiber; *Othrys*, a hill in Thessaly. Many of these, however, particularly those ending in *a*, *e*, and *um*, adopt the Gender of their terminations: as, *Matrōna*, f. the Marne in France; *Ætna*, f. a mountain in Sicily; *Soracte*, n. a hill in Italy; because Nouns in *e* of the Third Declension are Neuter.—See *Rules* 16 and 18.

7. *As partesque dabis maribus: sit at uncia dempta.*

As, a pound, or any thing that may be divided into twelve parts,* is Masculine. The various component parts of *as* are also Masculine, except *uncia*, an ounce, which is Feminine.

8. *Jungito femineis nomen Regionis et Urbis; Præcipuè quod in n ternæ fit, us osve secundæ. Est Tuder atque Argos neutrum, quibus adjice Gadir. Rariùs hic Marathon capit, et Pharsalus, Abydos. Mascula in us ternæ, Pontus, Sasonque, Canopus, Atque Tunes, Tecmon. Hic, at hoc vult sæpius Anxur.*

Cætera turba suos fines plerumque sequuntur.

Names of Countries and Cities are Feminine, especially those in *n* of the Third Declension, and in *us* or *os* of the Second: as, *Britannia*, Britain; *Persis*, Persia; *Roma*, Rome; *Carthāgo*, Carthage. This, as a general rule, refers chiefly to those Nouns which have a Masculine termination: as, *Ægyptus*,

* The Component parts of *as* are, *uncia*, an ounce, Fem.; *sextans*, 2 ounces; *quadrans*, 3; *triens*, 4; *quincunx*, 5; *semis*, 6; *septunx*, 7; *bes*, 8; *dodrans*, 9; *dextans*, or *decunx*, 10; *deunx*, 11 ounces.

Egypt; *Samos*, the island of Samos; *Corinthus*, Corinth; *Lacedæmon*, Lacedæmon.

The following names of cities and towns do not follow the general rule. *Tuder*, *Argos*, and *Gadir*, are Neut. *Marathon* *Pharsalus* and *Abidos*, are generally Fem. but sometime Masc. Those in *us* of the Third Declension are Masc.: as, *Pessinus*; and also *Pontus*, when used as the name of a country; *Sason*, a small island; *Canopus*, *Tuncs*, *Tecmon*, names of towns. *Anzur* is sometimes Masc. but more frequently Neuter.

But many names of Countries and Cities adopt the Gender of their terminations: as, *Sulmo*, m. *Ilium*, n. *Præneste*, n. names of cities. Some of the exceptions are also found Feminine in reference to the general word *urbs*: as, *gelida Præneste*. JUV.

9. Arbor femineis dabitur: sed mas *oleaster*,
Et *rhamnus*: petit HIC potiùs *cytissusque rubusque*:
Hic quandoque *larix*, *lotus* volet, atque *cupressus*:
Hoc quod in *um*, *suberque*, *siler*, dant *robur acerque*.

Names of trees are Feminine: as, *abies*, the silver-fir; *pomus*, an apple-tree; *pirus*, a pear-tree; *quercus*, an oak.

Oleaster, the wild olive-tree; and *rhamnus*, the white bramble, are Masc. *Cytissus*, the shrub trefoil; and *rubus*, the bramble-bush, are generally Masculine. *Larix*, the larch-tree; *lotus*, the lote-tree; *cupressus*, the cypress, are sometimes Masculine. Those in *um* are Neut; as, *buxum*, the box-tree; also *suber*, the cork-tree; *siler*, the osier; *robur*, oak of the hardest kind; and *acer*, the maple-tree.

Note.—*Sentis*, a brier, is also Masculine.

10. Feminæ Naves genus atque Poëmata quærunt.

Names of Ships and Poems are Feminine: as, *Argo*, the ship *Argo*; *Ænëis*, the *Æneid*; *Ilias*, the *Iliad*.

Proper Names, when applied to Ships or Poems, retain their Gender: as, *Python*, m. *Triton*, m.; and names of Poems which want the Singular take the Gender of their termination: as, *Adelphi*, m. *Georgica*, n.

11. Adjicito neutris quodcunque inflexile nomen.

Indeclinable Nouns are Neuter: as, *gummi*, gum; *fas*, right.

12. Literæ amant neutrum: sic pars pro nomine sumpta;
Et verbum quodvis pro nudâ voce repôstum.

Names of letters are generally Neuter: as, *a parvum*; *i longum*: also Verbs and other parts of speech used as Nouns: as, *Scire tuum*; *Cras istud*: likewise any word used objectively without reference to its meaning: as, *lux est monosyllabum*.

13. Sæpe genus vocum trahit ad se vox generalis:
Sic volucrem sequitur *bubo*, sic flumen *Iader*,

The general word frequently regulates the gender of the various words included under it: thus *Bubo*, an owl, is sometimes Fem. taking the gender of *avis*, or *volucris*; and *Iāder* is Neut. because *flumen*, the general word to which it refers, is Neuter.

14. Adjectiva trium generum sunt cuncta: sed unum Quædam, multa duos, capiunt tres plurima fines.

Adjectives have three Genders; some under one, some under two, and some under three terminations.

15. Pro fixo positum, genus optat mobile fixi.

An Adjective, when used for a Substantive, takes the Gender of the Substantive which it represents.

II. SPECIAL RULES.

A.

16. HÆC dat A quod primæ est: sed neutrum *Pascha* requirit.

Hadria mas æquor, pariterque *cometa*, *planeta*:
Mascula et interdum *talpam damamque* videbis.

Nouns in A of the First Declension are Feminine: as, *mensa*, a table; *ripa*, a bank; *unda*, a wave.

Pascha, the passover, is Neut. *Hadria*, the Hadriatic Sea; *comēta*, a comet; and *planēta*, a planet, are Masculine; likewise all Nouns applied to males: as, *poēta*, a poet; *nauta*, a sailor. *Talpa*, a mole; and *dama*, a doe, are sometimes Masculine.

Note.—*Hadria*, the town *Hadria*, is Feminine.

17. Sit neutri generis per A quicquid tertia flectit.

Nouns in A of the Third Declension are Neuter: as, *poēma*, a poem; *diadēma*, a crown.

E.

18. Hæc petit E primæ; neutrum deponit E ternæ.

Nouns in E of the First Declension are Feminine: as, *epitōme*, an abridgment; *grammaticæ*, grammar. Nouns in E of the Third are Neuter: as, *mare*, the sea; *rete*, a net.

I. U. Y.

19. Dant quibus I fines, Y, vel U, sunt omnia neutra.

Nouns in I, Y, and U, are Neuter: as, *sināpi*, mustard; *misy*, vitriol; *cornu*, a horn; *genu*, the knee.

O.

20. Hic dat O: femineis *halo* cum *caro* dantur et *echo*;
Quæque in IO, seu sint verbo, seu nomine nata,

Rem (numeris demptis) aliquam sine corpore signant.

Nouns in O are Masculine : as, *sermo*, speech ; *carbo*, a coal.

Halo, a circle round the sun or moon ; *caro*, flesh ; and *echo*, an echo, are Fem. ; also Nouns in IO denoting any thing incorporeal, whether derived from verbs or nouns : as, *legio*, a legion ; *oratio*, a speech ; *rebellio*, rebellion.

Nouns in IO denoting any bodily substance, with Names or Number, are Masc. according to the general rule : as, *scipio*, a staff ; *ternio*, the number three.

21. Adjice femineis, DO, GO : sed mascula *cudo*, *Harpago*, sic *ordo*, simul *udo*, *tendo*, *ligoque*.
Rariùs HÆC *margo* vati est, HIC sæpe *cupido*.
Arrhabo cum *cardo* muliebria vix imitanda.

Nouns in DO, and GO, are Feminine : as, *arundo*, a reed ; *formido*, fear ; *imago*, an image ; *origo*, an origin.

Cudo, a leather cap ; *harpago*, a drag ; *ordo*, order ; *udo*, a kind of shoe ; *tendo*, a tendon ; and *ligo*, a spade, are Masc. *Margo*, the brink of a river, is generally Masculine. *Cupido*, desire, is often Masc. with the poets, but always Fem. in prose writers. *Arrhabo*, an earnest ; and *cardo*, a hinge, are seldom Feminine.

C. L. M. T.

22. Quod fit in L, vel T, C, vel M, neutralibus adde :
Mascula *sol*, *mugil*, ceu *sal*, quod rariùs hoc vult.

Nouns in L, T, C, and M, are Neuter : as, *animal*, an animal ; *toral*, a bed-cover ; *caput*, the head ; *lac*, milk ; *regnum*, a kingdom ; *donum*, a gift.

Sol, the sun, and *mugil*, a mullet-fish, are Masc. *Sal*, salt, is Masc. sometimes Neuter ; *Sales*, Plural, is always Masculine.

N.

23. Masculeum capit N. Finita in MEN dato neutris,
Quæque secunda creat, cum *gluten* et *inguen* et *unguen* :
Addideris *pollen*. *Sindon* petit HÆC, et *aëdon* ;
Alcyonem junges, data postea queis comes *icon*.

Nouns in N are Masculine : as, *pecten*, a comb ; *canon*, a rule.

Nouns in MEN are Neuter : as, *carmen*, a song ; *lumen*, light ; also Greek Nouns in ON of the Second Declension : as, *symbolon*, a symbol ; likewise *gluten*, glue ; *inguen*, the groin ; *unguen*, ointment ; *pollen*, fine flour. *Sindon*, fine linen ; *aëdon*, a nightingale ; *Alcyon*, the kingfisher, and *icon*, an image, are Feminine.

AR.

24. Postulat AR neutrum : sed masculine *salar* optat.

Nouns in AR are Neuter : as, *calcar*, a spur ; *jubar*, the sun-beam. *Salar*, a trout, is Masculine.

ER.

25. ER capit HIC. Neutrum plantæ fructusve requirunt ;

At *tuber* HIC fructus ; *tuber* quemcunque tumorem Significans neutrale petit ; cumque *ubere spinther*, *Verque*, *cadaver*, *iter*. Dabit HIC aut HÆC tibi *linter*.

Nouns in ER are Masculine : as, *liber*, a book ; *aër*, the air. Names of Plants and Fruits are Neuter : as, *papāver*, a poppy ; *piper*, pepper. *Tüber*, when it signifies the fruit of the tuber-tree, is Masc. : but *tüber*, denoting any kind of swelling, is Neuter ; also *uber*, a pap ; *spinther*, a clasp ; *ver*, the spring ; *cadāver*, a carcass ; and *iter*, a journey. *Linter*, a boat, is Masc. or Feminine.

OR.

26. HIC dat OR. HÆC *arbor* : *cor*, *adorque*, hoc *marmor*, et *æquor*.

Nouns in OR are Masculine : as, *color*, a colour ; *honor*, honour. *Arbor*, a tree, is Feminine. *Cor*, the heart ; *ador*, wheat ; *marmor*, marble ; and *æquor*, the sea, are Neuter.

27. Hoc dat UR. HIC *furfur* capiet, cum *vulture turtur*.

Nouns in UR are Neuter : as, *murmur*, a noise ; *guttur*, the throat ; *fulgur*, lightning.

Furfur, bran ; *vultur*, a vulture ; and *turtur*, a turtle-dove, are Masculine.

AS.

28. AS petit HÆC. Neutrum est *vas vasis*, queisque Pelasgi

Dant *ātis* in patrio : quibus *antis*, mascula sunt ; Adjicito quotquot format tibi flexio prima.

Nouns in AS are Feminine : as, *ætas*, an age ; *pietas*, piety. *Vas*, *vasis*, a vessel, and Greek nouns having *ātis* in the Genitive, are Neuter : as, *artocreas*, *artocreātis*, a pie. Greek Nouns having *antis* in the Gen. are Masc. : as, *adāmas*, *-antis*, an adamant ; *gigas*, *-antis*, a giant ; also Nouns in *as* of the First Declension : as, *tīāras*, a turban.

ES.

29. HÆC dabit ES. Capiant *ales* HIC HÆCve, *palumbes*, Atque *dies* ; sed mas proles : mas *poples* et *ames*,

Fomes, pes, paries, palmes cum limite stipes,
Queis addes trames, termes, cum gurgite cespes ;
Et quæ fonte fluunt Graio : sed neutra capessunt
Hippomanes, panaces, nepenthes, sic cacoëthes.

Nouns in ES are Feminine : *as, rupes*, a rock ; *res*, a thing.

Ales, a bird ; *palumbes*, a ring-dove ; and *dies*, a day, are Masc. or Feminine. The following Nouns are Masculine : *meridies*, the mid-day ; *poples*, the ham of the leg ; *ames*, a fowler's staff ; *fomes*, fuel ; *pes*, the foot ; *paries*, a wall ; *palmes*, a vine-branch ; *limes*, a limit ; *stipes*, the stock of a tree ; *trames*, a path ; *termes*, an olive-bough ; *gurges*, a whirl-pool ; *cespes*, a turf ; also all Greek Nouns, either of the First or Third Declension : *as, comētes*, a comet ; *acinūces*, a Persian sword. The following Greek Nouns are Neuter, *hippomānes*, a kind of poison ; *panūces*, all-heal ; *nepenthes*, kill-grief ; *cacoëthes*, a bad custom.

Note.—*Dies* is always Masculine in the Plural.

IS.

30. IS dabo femineis. Sunt mascula *piscis et axis,*
Glis, callis, vermis, vectis, mensis, cucumisque,
Mugilis et postis, cum sanguine, fascis, et orbis,
Fustis item, collis, caulisque, et follis, et ensis,
Serpentemque notans cenchrus, cum vomere torris
 In NIS finitum Latium, *lapis, unguis, aqualis.*

Nouns in IS are Feminine : *as, classis*, a fleet ; *turris*, a tower.

The following are Masculine : *piscis*, a fish ; *axis*, an axle-tree ; *glis*, a rat ; *callis*, a beaten path ; *vermis*, a worm ; *vectis*, a lever ; *mensis*, a month ; *cucūmis*, a cucumber ; *mugilis*, a mullet-fish ; *postis*, a post ; *sanguis*, blood ; *fascis*, a bundle ; *orbis*, a circle, the world ; *fustis*, a staff ; *collis*, a hill ; *caulis*, the stalk of an herb ; *follis*, a pair of bellows ; *ensis*, a sword ; *cenchrus*, Gen. *cenchrus*, a serpent ; *vomis*, a ploughshare ; *torris*, a firebrand ; *lapis*, a stone ; *unguis*, a nail ; *aqualis*, a water-pot ; also Nouns of Latin origin in NIS : *as, panis*, bread. But Greek Nouns in NIS are Feminine, according to the general rule : *as, tyrannis*, tyranny.

Note.—*Cenchrus, -idis*, a kind of hawk, is Feminine.

31. HIC aut HÆC *finis, clunis, cum torque canalis,*
Dant, scrobis, ac anguis : corbis muliebre præoptat :
 Masculeo potiùs gaudent *pulvis, cinis, amnis.*

Finis, the end ; *clunis*, a buttock ; *torquis*, a chain ; *canalis*, a water-pipe ; *scrobis*, a ditch ; *anguis*, a serpent, are Masc. or Fem., but more frequently Masculine. *Corbis*, a twig-basket, is usually Feminine. *Pulvis*, dust ; *cinis*, ashes ;

annis, a river, are more commonly Masc. sometimes also Feminine.

Note.—*Fines*, when it signifies the borders or territories of a country, is always Masculine.

OS.

32. OS maribus detur. Sunt neutra *chaos, melos, os, os* : Postulat HÆC *arboſ, coſ, doſ*, et origine Græcâ Orta *eoſ, arctoſ, perimetroſ cum diametro*.

Nouns in OS are Masculine : *as, floſ*, a flower ; *roſ*, dew.

Chaoſ, a confused mass ; *meloſ*, a song ; *oſ, oriſ*, the mouth ; *oſ, oſſiſ*, a bone, are Neuter. *Arboſ*, a tree ; *coſ*, a whetstone ; *doſ*, a dowry, are Feminine ; also the following Nouns of Greek origin ; *eoſ*, the morning ; *arctoſ*, the constellation of the Bear ; *perimetroſ*, the circumference ; and *diametroſ*, the diameter of a circle.

US of the Second and Fourth Declension.

33. Nomen in US mas est, seu quartæ sive secundæ.

Nouns in US of the Second and Fourth Declensions are Masculine : *as, annuſ*, a year ; *vultuſ*, the countenance.

34. HÆC *domuſ et vannuſ*, pro fructu *ficiſ*, et *alvuſ*, Sic *humuſ* atque *manuſ*, poſcunt : *acuſ* addito quartæ, *Porticuſ* atque *tribuſ*. Capit hoc *viruſ, pelaguſque*.

The following Nouns of the Second Declension are Feminine : *vannuſ*, a sieve ; *alvuſ*, the belly ; *humuſ*, the ground ; also *manuſ*, the hand ; *acuſ*, a needle ; *porticuſ*, a gallery ; *tribuſ*, a tribe, which are of the Fourth. Likewise *domuſ*, a house, which is partly of the Second, and partly of the Fourth ; and *ficiſ*, a fig, which is declined according to both. *Viruſ*, poison ; and *pelaguſ*, the sea, of the Second, are Neuter.

35. Nomen in OS Græcum, quod in US mutare Latini Sæpe solent, normam sequitur plerumque virilem : Feminæ sed multa petunt : ut, *abyſſuſ, eremuſ, Antidotuſque, pharuſ, dialectuſ, carbaſuſ* : adde Ex *odoſ* et *phthongoſ* genitum, quæque a generali Voce genus plantæ et gemmæ capiunt muliebri.

Greek Nouns in OS which the Latins change into US, are generally Masculine : *as, cyathuſ*, a cup ; *gyruſ*, a circle. Many, however, are Feminine : *as, abyſſuſ*, a bottomless pit ; *erënuſ*, a desert ; *antidotuſ*, an antidote ; *pharuſ*, a watchtower ; *dialectuſ*, a dialect ; *carbaſuſ*, a sail ; the Compounds of *odoſ* and *phthongoſ* : *as, periöduſ*, a period ; *diphthonguſ*, a diphthong ; also some names of plants and gems following the Gender of the general words *planta* and *gemma* : *as, papyruſ*, an Egyptian plant ; *amethyſtuſ*, the amethyst.

US of the Third Declension.

36. Postulat US neutrum, quoties id tertia flectit.

Nouns in US of the Third Declension are Neuter: *as*, *pectus*, the breast; *littus*, a shore; *nemus*, a grove.

37. Feminine voluere *palus*, *subscusque*, *salusque*
 Quæque *senex*, *juvenis*, cum *servio*, nomina formant,
 Et *virtus*, *incus*. At mascula sunt *lepus* et *mus*,
 Et *pus* compositum: petit at muliebri *lagopus*.

The following Nouns are Feminine: *palus*, a fen; *subscus*, a dovetail; *salus*, health, safety; *senectus*, old age; *juventus*, youth; and *servitus*, slavery (from *senex*, *juvénis* and *servio*); *virtus*, virtue; *incus*, an anvil. *Lepus*, a hare; *mus*, a mouse; and the Compounds of *pus*; *as*, *tripus*, a tripod, are Masculine. *Lagopus*, hare's foot, is Feminine.

US doubtful.

38. Hic aut HÆC donant *balanus*, *specus*, atque *phaselus*,
Barbitus, atque *penus*, *grossus*: sed *grus*, *atomusque*
 Feminineum potius cupiunt; *colus* adde, virile
 Quod rarò invenies: muliebri at contrà *camelus*
 Est ubi nonnunquam videas. Vult hic dare *vulgus*,
 Sed magis hoc. Ternæ *specus* et *penus* addito neu-
 tris.

The following Nouns in US are sometimes Masculine, and sometimes Feminine; *balanus*, the fruit of the palm-tree; *specus*, -*us*, a den; *phaselus*, a yacht; *barbitus*, a harp; *penus*, -*i*, or -*us*, all kinds of provisions; *grossus*, a green fig. *Grus*, a crane; and *atomus*, an atom; are generally Feminine, seldom Masculine. *Colus*, a distaff, is seldom Masculine. *Camelus*, a camel, is sometimes Feminine; but more commonly Masculine. *Vulgus*, the rabble, is sometimes Masculine, but more often Neuter. *Specus* and *penus*, of the Third Declension, are Neuter.

YS.

39. Nomen in YS Græcum est, genus et sibi feminine vult.

Greek Nouns in YS are Feminine: *as*, *chelys*, a harp; *chlamys*, a soldier's cloak.

S preceded by a diphthong.

40. *Æs* neutrale petit: *laus*, *fraus*, muliebria sunt.

Æs, brass, or money, is Neuter: *laus*, praise; and *fraus*, fraud, are Feminine.

S preceded by a consonant.

41. S dato femineis, si consona ponitur ante.

Mascula sed *pons, fons, mons, seps*, dum denotat anguem ;

Et queis P præit S polysyllaba, *forcipe* dempto, *Densque, chalybs*, cum *gryphe, rudens*, quod rariùs HÆC vult.

Hic aut HÆC *serpens* dat, *scrobs, stirps* truncus, *adepsque*.

Dans *animans* genus omne, tamen muliebre præoptat.

Nouns in S preceded by a consonant are Feminine : as, *mors*, death ; *pars*, a part ; *trabs*, a beam.

The following are Masculine : *pons*, a bridge ; *fons*, a fountain ; *mons*, a mountain ; *seps*, a kind of serpent ; nouns of more than one syllable in PS : as, *hydrops*, a dropsy ; (except *forceps*, a pair of tongs, f.) ; *dens*, a tooth ; *chalybs*, steel ; *gryps*, a griffon ; and *rudens*, a cable, which last is sometimes Feminine. *Serpens*, a serpent ; *scrobs*, a ditch ; *stirps*, the trunk of a tree ; and *adeps*, fatness, are Masculine or Feminine. *Animans*, an animal, is of all Genders, but most commonly or the Feminine.

Note.—*Seps*, a hedge, and *stirps*, offspring, kindred, are Feminine only.

X.

42. HÆC petit X. AX, EX maribus polysyllaba junge :

Dic tamen HÆC *fornax, smilax, carex*, velut *halax*,
Et cum prole *panax*, et *forfex* atque *supellex*.

Nouns in X are Feminine : as, *pax*, peace ; *vox*, a voice.

Polysyllables in AX and EX are Masculine : as, *thorax*, the breast ; *frutex*, a shrub. Of these, however, the following are Feminine : *fornax*, a furnace ; *smilax*, bindweed ; *carex*, a sedge ; *halax*, a herring ; *panax*, all-heal ; *opopanax*, the juice of the herb all-heal ; *forfex*, a pair of scissors ; *supellex*, furniture.

43. Mascula sunt *calix, phœnix*, pro vermeque *bombyx*,
Et *coccyx, fornix*, et *onyx* vas, aut lapis unde
Vas fit ; *oryx, tradux, grex* his adjuuge *calyxque*.
Femineo interdum data *tradux* cum *grege* cernes.

The following Nouns in X are Masculine : *calix*, a cup ; *phœnix*, a bird called a phenix ; *bombyx*, a silk-worm ; *coccyx*, a cuckoo ; *fornix*, a vault ; *onyx*, alabaster, or an alabaster box ; *oryx*, a wild goat ; *tradux*, a graft of a vine, *grex*, a flock ; *calyx*, the bud of a flower. *Tradux* and *grex* are sometimes Feminine.

Note.—*Bombyx*, when it signifies a silk garment ; and *onyx* a gem, are Feminine.

44. Hæc modò femineis, maribus modò juncta videbis ;
Calx pro parte pedis metâve laboris, et *hystrix*,
Imbræx; *sardonychem* jungas, *rumicem*, *silicem*que:
 Hic mage vult *cortex*, et *obæx*, cum *pumice varix* ;
 HÆC potiùs *lymax*, *lynx*, et cum *sandice perdir* :
Atriplici neutrum meliùs dabo quàm muliebre.

The following Nouns are sometimes Masculine and sometimes Feminine : *calx*, the heel, or the end of any thing, the goal ; *hystrix*, a porcupine ; *imbræx*, a gutter-tile ; *sardonyx*, a precious stone ; *rumex*, the herb sorrel ; *silæx*, a flint ; and also *cortex*, the bark of a tree ; *obæx*, a bar ; *pumæx*, a pumice-stone ; *varix*, a swollen vein, which are seldom Feminine. *Limax*, a snail ; *lynx*, an ounce ; *sandæx*, a sort of purple ; *perdir*, a partridge ; are more commonly Feminine. *Atriplex*, the herb orach, is generally Neuter.

Note.—*Calx*, when it signifies limestone, is always Feminine.

I, Æ, A, and E Plural.

45. I maribus plurale dabis : muliebre sed Æ vult :
 Ast A, et E Græcum, cupiunt neutralibus addi.

Plural Nouns in I are Masculine : as, *libëri*, children ; those in Æ are Feminine : as, *cunæ*, a cradle ; those in A are Neuter : as, *arma*, arms.

Plural Nouns in E from the Greek are also Neuter : as, *mele*, songs ; *cete*, whales. See page 97.

Defective Nouns.

46. In reliquis primo numero primive carentùm
 Recto, animo, qualem vocum natura reposcat,
 Concipito talem : sic *prece præx* tibi forma.
 Hic dat *casse* tamen, dat et *impete* ; *verbere* vult
 HOC ;
 Hic *veprem*, *pecudis* capit HÆC ; HÆ postulat *Idus*.

In Nouns of other Terminations which are defective in the Nominative, or in the whole of the Singular, the Gender is regulated by the termination of the Nominative from which they are supposed to have come : Thus *preci* (Dat.), a prayer, is Feminine, because it comes from the old Nominative *prex*, which is Feminine, by Rule 42. *Feminis*, (Gen.) the thigh, is Neuter, because the supposed Nominative *femen* is Neuter, by Rule 23.

The following are Exceptions : *casse*, a net ; *impëtis*, force, and *vepres*, a brier, Masculine : *verbëris*, a scourge, Neuter : *pecûdis*, a beast, and *Idus*, the Ides of a month, Feminine. See *Defective Nouns*, pages 97 and 98.

EXERCISES ON THE RULES FOR THE GENDER OF NOUNS.

RULE 1. Jupiter, Mars, Homerus, Virgilius, Tros, pater, consul, flamen, ædilis, optio, fur, equus. 2. Juno, Diana, Troas, Helena, Venus, Siren, mater, uxor, anus, nurus, socrus, equa. 3. Conjux, parens, &c. 4. Passer, aquila, liberi, homo, elephantus, hirundo, vulpes, salmo, balæna.

5. Januarius, Aprilis, September—Aquila, Eurus, Notus, Iapyx. 6. Tiberis, Rhodanus, Tagus, Eurotas, Euphrates, Ganges, Tigris—Othrys, Olympus—*Allia, Matrona, Lethe, Ætna, Styx, Soracte, Alpes.* 8. Italia, Britannia, Ægyptus, Samos, Roma, Carthago, Lacedæmon, Persis, Pylos,—*Tuder, Argos, Gadir—Marathon, Pharsalus, Abydos—Pessinus, Hydrus, Opus, Pontus, Sason, Canopus, Tunes, Tecmon,—Anxur—Sulmo, Acragas, Londinum, Zeugma, Reate, Præneste, Cære, Albion, Ilion, Tibur, Veii, Athenæ, Gades, Susa, Hierosolyma.*

7. As, sextans, semis, quincunx, bes—*uncia.* 9. Quercus, abies, pinus, taxus, pirus, fraxinus—*oleaster, rhamnus—cytisus, rubus—larix, lotus, cupressus—buxum, ligustrum, suber, siler, robur, acer—sentis.* 10. Argo, Centaurus, Chimæra, Tigris, Spes, Victoria, Æneis, Ilias. 11. Gummi, fas, nefas, pondo, mille, cæpe.

16. Ala, litera, turba, mensa, hederæ, invidia, rana—*Hadria cometa, planeta—talpa, dama—Pascha.* 17. Dogma, poema diadema, epigramma, stemma. 18. Epitome, rhetorice, grammaticæ—ancile, cubile, mare, ovile, præsepe. 19. Sinapi, gummi—cornu, genu, tonitru—moly, misy.

20. Sermo, bufo, carbo, pulmo, mucro—*halo, caro, echo—*oratio, opinio, rebellio, communitio, legio, seditio—scipio, scorpio, papilio, pugio, unio, ternio, quaternio, senio. 21. Arundo, imago, grando, caligo, testudo, origo—*cudo, harpago, ordo, udo, tendo, ligo—margo—cupido—cardo, arrhabo.*

22. Animal, puteal, vectigal—lac, halec—caput, sinciput, occiput—bellum, regnum, donum, prælium, armentum—*sol, mugil—sal.* 23. Canon, delphin, ren, pæan, pecten—flumen, agmen, carmen, cognomen, cacumen—symbolon, symposion, barbiton—*gluten, inguen, unguen, pollen—sindon, aëdon, alcyon, icon.*

24. Calcar, nectar, jubar, far, lacunar—*salar.* 25. Liber, imber, aër, ager, carcer, anser, agger, culter—papaver, cicer, piper—*tuber* (a swelling), *uber, spinther, ver, cadaver, iter—linter.* 26. Dolor, color, honor, timor, sopor—*arbor—cor, ador, marmor, æquor.* 27. Guttur, murmur, robur, sulphur—*furfur, vultur, turtur.*

28. Ætas, pietas, voluptas, lampas, anas—*vas* (a vessel)—artocreas, erysipelas—adamas, elephas—tiāras, parças. 29. Ædes, fames, sedes, res, facies, soboles, proles, spes, vulpes, merces, quies, seges—*ales, palumbes, dies—meridies—poples,*

ames, fomes, pes, paries, palmes, limes, stipes, trames, termes, gurges, cespes—*cometes, achates, lebes, magnes, acinaces*—*hip-pomanes, panaces, nepenthes, cacoethes.*

30. *Avis, vallis, ovis, classis, naris, lis, pestis, apis, pellis, cen-chris* (a kind of hawk)—*piscis, axis, glis, callis, vermis, vectis, mensis, cucumis, mugilis, postis, sanguis, fascis, orbis, fustis, collis, caulis, follis, ensis, cenchris* (a kind of serpent), *vomis, torris, lapis, unguis, aqualis*—*panis, crinis, ignis, funis*,—*ty-rannis, coronis.* 31. *Finis, clunis, torquis, canalis, scrobis, anguis*—*corbis*—*pulvis, cinis, amnis.*

32. *Flos, ros, honos, mos*—*chaos, melos, os* (a bone), *os* (the mouth)—*arbos, cos, dos, eos, arctos, perimetros, diametros.*

33. *Annus, oculus, ventus, terminus, vultus, gradus, currus, impetus.* 34. *Domus, vannus, ficus, alvus, humus, manus, acus* (a needle), *porticus, tribus*—*virus, pelagus.* 35. *Cyathus, gyrus, dialogus, bolus*—*abyssus, eremus, antidotus, pharus, dialectus, carbasus*—*periodus, methodus, synodus, diphthongus, amethystus, chrysolithus, crystallus, sapphirus, &c.*—*papyrus, nardus, byssus, hyssopus, costus, crocus, &c.*

36. *Corpus, onus, littus, nemus, pignus, thus.* 37. *Palus, subscus, salus, senectus, juvenus, servitus, virtus, incus*—*lepus, mus*—*tripus*—*lagopus.* 38. *Balanus, specus* (4th decl.), *phaselus, barbatus, penus* (2d and 4th), *grossus*—*grus, atomus*—*colus*—*camelus*—*vulgus.* 39. *Chlamys, chelys.* 40. *Æs*—*laus, fraus.*

41. *Mors, pars, gens, juglans, hyems, mens, trabs, stirps* (an offspring), *seps* (a hedge)—*pons, fons, mons, seps* (a kind of serpent), *dens, chalybs, gryps*—*rudens*—*hydrops, merops, epops*—*forceps*—*serpens, scrobs, stirps* (the stock of a tree), *adeps*—*animans.*

42. *Pax, lex, vox, calx* (limestone), *falx, arx, onyx* (a gem), *cervix, cornix, radix, bombyx* (a silk garment)—*thorax, corax, murex, vertex, vortex, frutex*—*fornax, smilax, carex, halex, panax, opopanax, forfex, supellex.* 43. *Calix, phœnix, bombyx* (a silkworm), *coccyx, fornix, onyx* (alabaster, or an alabaster-box), *oryx, tradux, grex, calyx*—*tradux, grex.* 44. *Calx* (the heel, a goal), *hystrix, imbrex, sardonix, rumex, silex*,—*sortex, obex, pumex, varix*—*limax, lynx, sandyx, perdis*—*atriplex.*

45. *Liberi, fasti, posteri*—*divitiæ, cunæ, induciæ, nuptiæ, tenebræ*—*arma, castra, comitia, mœnia, rostra*—*mele, cete, Tempe.* 46. *Spontis, preci, grates, ditionis, vicis, necis*—*casæ, impete, veprem*—*verbere*—*pecudis, Idus.*

II. RULES FOR THE QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES.

That part of Grammar which treats of the quantity of Syllables, and the Construction of Verse, is called *Prosody*.

By the Quantity of a Syllable is meant, the time occupied in pronouncing it.

Syllables are either long or short. A long syllable occupies, in pronouncing, double the time which is assigned to a short syllable. Long syllables are marked thus, ¨: as, *Dīdō*; short syllables are marked thus, ˇ: as, *pătĕr*.

I. GENERAL RULES.

1. Vocalem breviaut aliā subeunte Latini.

A vowel before another vowel or a diphthong, in words of Latin origin, is short: as, *dĕus, pŭer, dĕæ*; or before *h* and a vowel: as, *trăho, mīhi, nīhil*; because *h*, in verse, is considered merely as a breathing.

2. Ni capit *r*, *fio* produc: et nomina quintæ
E servant longum, si præsit *i*, ceu *speciēi*.
 Anceps *ius* erit patrio: sed protrahe *alius*,
Alterius brevia tantum: commune sit *ohe*.
Pompēi Cāi produc, conformia jungens.
Dianam varia: longa *āēr, diūs* et *ēheu*,
 Et patrius primæ cum sese solvit in *āi*.

Exc. The *i* is long in *fio* when not followed by *r*: as, *fiēbam*: in the other Tenses it is short: as, *fiērem*. The *e* in the penult of the Gen. and Dat. of Nouns of the Fifth Declension, when preceded by *i*, is long: as, *speciēi*.* Genitives in *ius* have the *i* long in prose, but common† in verse: as, *unius*: but *alius* is always long, and *alterius* is always short. Proper names in *ēius*, and *āius*: as, *Pompēius, Cāius*, with Vocatives of the same kind, are long; also the old form of the Genitive of the First Declension: as, *terrāi*; likewise *āer, diūs, and ēheu*.

Ohe, Diana and *Io* (a Proper Name) have the first syllable common; but *io* (the interjection) follows the general rule.

3. Hic Græci variant, nec certâ lege tenentur.

The Quantity of a Vowel before another vowel or a diphthong,

* All Nouns of the Fifth Declension have the *e* long in the penult of the Genitive Singular, except *fides* and *res*, in which it is common. and *spes*, in which it is always short.

† The quantity of a syllable is said to be *common*, or *doubtful*, when it is found sometimes long, and sometimes short.

in words derived from the Greek, cannot be reduced to any precise Rule. It is short in some words : as, *Dandē, idēa* ; and long in others : as, *Lycāon, Cytherā*.

4. Si postponatur vocali consona bina,
Aut duplex, longa est positu : sin utraque vocem
Incipiat, rarò præeuntī est ultima longa.

A Vowel before two Consonants, either in the same, or in consecutive words, or before a double Consonant, is long : as, *bēllum, discors, āxis* : and in this case the vowel is said to be long by *Position*. The Double Consonants are *X, Z,* and *J,* except in Compound words : as, *bijugus, quadrjūgus*.

The Latin poets after the time of Lucretius, seldom, if ever, allowed a vowel in the end of a word to remain short, when followed by a word beginning with *sc, sp, sq, st,* though from the few examples which occur, they appear to have carefully avoided such a collocation. The quantity of a vowel in the end of a word is not affected by any other combination of consonants, or by a double consonant in the beginning of the following word.

5. Si mutæ liquida est subjuncta in syllabâ eâdem,
Quæ brevis antevenit vocalis, redditur anceps.
Hanc tamen in prosâ semper breviare memento.
Sunt *l, r,* liquidæ, queis rarò jungimus *m, n.*

A Vowel naturally short, when followed by a Mute* and either of the Liquids, *l, r,* in the same syllable, is common in verse, but always short in prose : as, *agris, pharctra, volucris*. In a few words taken immediately from the Greek, a vowel is allowed to remain short before a Mute, and either of the two other Liquids, *m, n* : as, *cŷcnus, Prœcne*.

If the Liquid stand before the Mute, or belong to a different syllable, the preceding vowel is necessarily long : as, *ârte, āb-luo, ōb-ruo, quamōb-rem*.

A Vowel naturally long is never made short before a Mute and a Liquid : as, *mātris, salūbris,* from *māter, salūber*.

6. Vocalem efficiet semper Contractio longam.

Contracted Syllables are long : as, *cogo,* for *coŷgo* ; *alius,* for *aliius* ; *sīs,* for *si vis* ; *tibicen,* for *tibiicen,* or *tibiacen*.

7. Diphthongum produc in Græcis atque Latinis :
In Græcis semper : at PRÆ composita sequente
Vocali brevia : veluti *præit* atque *præustus*.

* There are ten Mutes : *b, c, d, f, j, k, p, q, t, v* ; and four Liquids : *l, r, m, n,* of which the first two only come within the limits of this rule, except in Greek words.

Diphthongs are long in Latin and Greek words: as, *Cæsar, aurum, fœnus*; *Eubœa, Æneas, Harpyia*.

Exc. The Preposition *præ*, when prefixed to a word beginning with a Vowel, is short: as, *præceo, præustus*.

II. SPECIAL RULES.

First and Middle Syllables.

8. *Derivata tenent mensuram primigenorum*:
Orta tamen brevibus, suspicio, regula, sedes,
Sœcius, humanus, pœnuria, mobilis, humor,
Jumentum, fœmes, primam producere gaudent.
Corripiunt sed arista, vadium, sœpor atque lucerna,
Duxque dœcis, stabilisque, fides, ditioque, quœsillus,
Nata licet longis; quœ pluraque suggeret usus.

Derivative words usually retain the quantity of the words from which they are formed: as, *amicus, pavidus*, from *amo, pæveo*; *maternus, nativus*, from *mater, natus*; *legam, lægeram*, from *lego, lægi*; *virgineus, sanguineus*, from *virginis* and *sanguinis*.

Exc. 1. The following Derivatives are long, although the corresponding syllables in their Primitives are short: *suspicio* from *suspïcor, regula* from *rœgo, sedes* from *sœdeo, sœcius* from *sœcus, humanus* from *hœmo, pœnuria* from *pœnus, mobilis* from *mœveo, humor* from *hœmus, jumentum* from *jœvo, fœmes* from *fœveo*.

Exc. 2. The following are short, from Primitives which have the corresponding syllables long: *arista* from *arco, vadium* from *vædo, sœpor* from *sœpio, lucerna* from *lœceo, dœcis* from *dœco, stabilis* from *stætum, fides* from *fido, ditio* from *dïtis, quœsillus* from *quælus*.

Note 1.—*Mobilis, jumentum, and fœmes* are necessarily long, being derived from the Supines, *mœtum, jœtum, and fœtum*; these Supines being probably lengthened by contraction.

Note 2. The following Derivative words, which are of frequent occurrence, also differ in quantity from their Primitives: *jœgerum* from *jœgum, læterna* from *læteo, mæcero* from *mæcer, mœlestus* from *mœles, nœta* and *nœto* from *nœtus, perfidus* from *fidus, tœgula* from *tœgo, vœco* from *vœx, vœcis*.

9. *Simplicium servant legem composita suorum,*
Quamvis diphthongus vel vocalis varietur.
At breviant nihilum, cum pejero, dejero, nec non
Veridicus, sociis junctis, et semisœpïtus.
Cognitus his addes, velut *agnitus, innubus, atque*
Pronubus: at longis *ambitus* mobile junges,
Imbœcillus item: sed *connubium* variabis.

Compounds usually retain the quantity of the Simple words of which they are composed: as, *perlēgo*, *invideo*, from *lēgo*, *vīdeo*; *perlēgi*, *invīdi*, from *lēgi*, *vīdi*; *imprōbus*, *perjūrus*, from *prōbus*, *jūris*.

The quantity of the simple word is not altered by the change of a vowel or diphthong in the Compound: as, *concīdo*, *irritus*, from *ēdo*, *rātus*; *concīdo*, *inīquus*, from *cædo*, *æquus*.

Exc. The following Compounds differ in quantity from the Simple words: *nihilum* from *ne* and *hilum*, *pejēro* and *dejēro* from *jūro*, *veridīcus* and other Adjectives in *dīcus* from *dīco*, *semisōpitus* from *sōpitus*, *cognītus* and *agnītus* from *nōtus*, *innūbus* and *pronūbus* from *nūbo*, *imbēcillus* from *bāculus*, *ambītus* from *ītum*. *Connubium* from *nūbo* has the second syllable common.

10. *Quam disjuncta dabat mensuram præpositura,
Juncta tenet: subiens illam nisi litera mutet.*

Prepositions, when compounded with other words, retain their original quantity: as, *āmitto*, *dēduco*; *āboleo*, *pērimo*, because *ā* and *dē* are long, and *āb* and *pēr* short. *Trans* frequently drops the last two letters in composition, but retains its proper quantity: as, *trāduco*, for *transduco*.

Prepositions ending in a Vowel become short, when prefixed to words which begin with a vowel: as, *dēoscūlor*, *prōhibeo*. *Ob* sometimes drops the *b* before a Consonant, in which case the *o* remains short: as, *ōmitto*, for *obmitto*. The Prepositions which end in a Consonant become long by *Position*, when placed before another Consonant: as, *ādmitto*.

11. *Est PRO breve in Græcis, PRO longum rite Latinis.
At rape quæ fundus, fugio, neptisque, neposque,
Et festum, fari, fateor, fanumque creârunt.
Hisce præfecto addes, pariterque præcella, prætervus,
Atque præpago genus; præpago protrahe vitis.
Propino varia, verbum propago, profundo:
Cum pello, curo genitis, Proserpina junge.*

The Preposition *pro* is short in Greek words: as, *Prōmetheus*, *prōlogus*, *prōpheta*:* it is generally long in Latin words: as, *prōdo*, *prōmitto*, *prōveho*.

Exc. 1. In the following Latin words *pro* is short; *prōfundus*, *prōfugio*, *prōfugus*, *prōneptis*, *prōnepos*, *prōfestus*, *prōfari*, *prōfiteor*, *prōfanus*, *prōfano*, *prōfecto*, *prōfiscor*, *prōfectus*, *prōcella*, *prōtervus*, and *prōpago* when it signifies a *race* or *lineage*; but when it signifies a *vine-stock*, the first syllable is long.

* *Pro*, in words transferred from the Greek, represents the Greek Preposition *περ*, in which the vowel is short.

Exc. 2. In the following words *pro* is common: *propino*, *propago* (a Verb), *profundo*, *propello*, *propulso*, *procuro*, and *Proserpina*, though not a Compound.

Note.—The rule here given for the quantity of *pro* in *profundo*, *propello*, and *procuro*, is not supported by sufficient authority: in the first, *pro* is always found short in the best writers; and in the other two, it is always long. The first syllable of *propago* is common both in the noun and verb. The distinction mentioned above is not observed by the best writers.

12. SE produc et DI, præter *dirimo*, atque *disertus*.
Est RE breve: at viduum personis protrahe *refert*.

The Inseparable Prepositions *se* and *di* are long in Compound words: as, *sẽparo*, *dĩvello*: except in *dirimo* and *disertus*.

Re is short: as, *rẽmitto*; also in verbs beginning with a vowel, where *d* is inserted for the sake of euphony: as, *rẽdamo*. *Re* in the Impersonal Verb *refert*, is long; but is here to be considered not as the inseparable Preposition, but as the dative or ablative of *res*.

Re, though naturally short, is made long in the following Compound words: *rẽcido*, *rẽduco*, *rẽligio*, *rẽligiosus*, *rẽliquiã*, *rẽlatum*, *rẽmotum*; it is always long in the three Preterites, *rẽperit*, *rẽpulis*, and *rẽtulit*.

The prefix *ve*, signifying *small*, is long in composition, and *ne* (negative) and *si*, which are long as monosyllables, are short: as, *vẽsanus*, *nẽfas*, *sĩquidem*.

13. Pars si componens fini prior *i* vel *o* donat,
Sit breve: *vaticinor* monstraverit *Arctophylaxque*.

I and *o* in the end of the first component part of a word are generally short: as, *omnĩpotens*, *hõdie*. The exceptions are contained in the following rule:

14. *I* quibus est flexu mutabile, jungito longis,
Quæque queunt sensu salvo divellier, addens
De quibus aut Crasis aliquid vel Syncopa tollit.
Idem masculineum produc, et *ubique*, et *ibidem*;
Huic dein agglomerans turbæ composita *diei*.
His intro, retro, controque, et *quando* creata
(*Quandõquidem* excepto,) bene junxeris, atque *aliõquin*.
Quæque per *o* magnum scribuntur nomina Graiis.

The following words have *i* and *o* long in the end of the first component part:

1. Those in which *i* is the Termination of a case: as, *quĩdam*, *tantĩdem*, *reĩpublicæ*, *qualĩcunq̃ue*.
2. Those in which the component parts may be separated without injuring the sense: as, *ludĩmagister*, *lucrifacio*, *sĩquis*; which are also written, *ludi magister*, *lucri facio*, *si quis*.

3. Those in which a syllable has been dropped by Crasis or Syncope : as, *tibicen* for *tibiacen*, *bīgæ* for *bijugæ*, *scilicet* for *scirelicet*.
4. *Idem* has *i* long in the Nom. and Voc. Singular Masc., but short in the Neuter. *I* is long in *ubique* and *ibidem*, but short in *ubivis*, and doubtful in *ubicunque*.
5. The compounds of *dies* : as, *bīduum*, *merīdies*. But *quotidie* and *quotidianus* have the second syllable sometimes short.
6. Latin words compounded with *intro*, *retro*, *contro* and *quando* : as, *intrōduco*, *retroduco*, *controversia*, *quandōque* ; likewise *aliōquin*, *cæterōquin*, *utrōbique*.
7. Words transplanted from the Greek in which *o* represents ω : as, *geōmetra*, *Minōtaurus*, *lagōpus*.

Note.—The two preceding rules would have been more simple had the principle stated in *Rule 9* been kept in view, that words when joined in composition retain their natural quantity, unless they are modified by contraction or otherwise. Thus the *i* in *quīdam*, *tantīdem*, *ludīmagister*, *sīquis*, &c. is long, because it is long in *quī*, *tantī*, *ludī*, *sī*, &c. In *bīduum*, *īdem*, *scilicet*, the first syllable is long by contraction. The same principle applies to some words which have *o* long in the end of the first component part : as, *aliōquin*, *cæterōquin*, *utrōbique*, because it is long in *aliō*, *cæterō* and *utrō*. So likewise in *quāre*, *quāpropter*, &c., the *a* is long because it is long in *quā*. In *omnipotens*, *semivir*, &c., the *s* of *omnis* and *semis* is dropped before the consonants, and the *i* consequently remains short.

The following facts concerning the Compounds of *facio* are taken from Professor Ramsay's excellent work on Latin Prosody : In *calēfacio*, *calēfacto*, *labēfacio*, *labēfacto*, *madēfacio*, *pavēfacio*, *rubēfacio*, *stupēfacio*, *tremēfacio*, *tumēfacio*, the *e* is uniformly short. *Patefacio* has the second syllable generally short ; it is lengthened by Lucretius in two passages, of which the one is a disputed reading. *Tepefacio*, with one exception, has the *e* always short ; in *liquefacio* it is generally short. *Putrefacio*, which is an unusual word, appears to have the *e* common. *Expergēfacta* and *conservēfacit*, are found with the *e* long, but not in poets of the Augustan age.

Perfects and Supines of Verbs.

15. Præterita assumunt primam dissyllaba longam.

Tolle bibit, scīdit, et fidit, ac tūlit, ortaque do, sto.

Præterites of two syllables and the Tenses formed from them, have the first syllable long : as, *vēni*, *vīdi*, *vīci*, *īvi* ; *vēneram*, &c.

Exc. Bibi, scīdi from *scindo*, *fīdi* from *findo*, *tūli*, *dēdi*, and *stēti*, or *stīti*, have the first syllable short.

16. Præteritum geminans primam, breviabit utramque,
Ut *pario pēpēri* ; vetet id nisi consona bina.
At quod *cædo* creat tardat, ceu *pedo* secundam.

Preterites which double the first syllable have the first two syllables short: as, *pĕpĕri*, *tĕtĭgi*, *cĕcĭdi*; except *ccĕdi* from *cædo*, *pepĕdi*, and those in which the middle syllable is made long by Position: as, *fefĕlli*.

17. *Cuncta Supina tenent primam dissyllaba longam*:
Præter nata sero, cieo, lino, cum sino, sisto,
Quæ breviant; eo, doque, ruo, queo junge, reorque.

Supines of two syllables, and the parts of the Verb formed from them, have the first syllable long: as, *vĭsum*, *cāsum*, *mĕctum*; *vĭsus*, &c.

Exc. Sātum from *sero*, *cĭtum** from *cieo* (See page 112, Note 15), *lĭtum* from *lino*, *sĭtum* from *sino*, *stātum* from *sisto*, *ĭtum* from *eo*, *dātum* from *do*, *rātum* in the compounds of *ruo*, *quĭtum* from *queo*, *rātum* from *reor*, have the first syllable short.

18. *Cætera præsentis mensuram verba reservant.*
Excipe sed pōsui, pōsitum, gĕnui, gĕnitumque,
Et pōtui; quæ dant quoque solvo et volvo supina.

All Preterites and Supines, except those included in the preceding Rules, retain, in the first syllable, the quantity of the first syllable of the Present: as, *vōco*, *vōcavi*, *vōcatum*; *clāmo*, *clāmavi*, *clāmatum*; *mōneo*, *mōnui*, *mōnitum*.

Exc. Pōsui, *pōsitum*, from *pōno*; *gĕnui*, *gĕnitum*, from *gĭgno*: *sōlutum*, and *vōlutum*, from *sōlvo*, and *vōlvo*, have the first syllable short, though the corresponding syllable in the Present is long.

19. *Præ tum vocalem polysyllaba cuncta supina*
Producunt, ātum, quibus ētum finis, et ūtum:
Ivi præterito veniens sociabis et ĭtum.
Cætera corripies in ĭtum quæcunque residunt.

Supines of more than two syllables in *ātum*, *ētum*, and *ūtum*, have the penult long: as, *amātum*, *delētum*, *minūtum*. So also Supines in *ĭtum* from Preterites in *īvi*: as *cupĭvi*, *cupĭtum*, (except *eo* and its compounds, See page 59); but all other Supines in *ĭtum* have the penult short: as, *monui*, *monĭtum*; *abolĕvi*, *abolĭtum*. *Recenseo*, has *recensĭtum*.

20. *In rus Participi semper penultima longa est.*

Participles in *rus* have the penult always long: as, *amatūrus*.

* The Compounds which are found in the Perfect Participle with the penult short are *conĕitus*, *excĭtus*, *incĭtus*, and *percĭtus*: *conĕitus* is also supported by authority, and *excĭtus* and *excĭtus* are used indifferently. These appear to be the only Compounds which are found in the poets.

INCREASE OR CREMENT OF NOUNS.

Nouns are said to *increase* when they have more syllables in the oblique cases than in the Nominative: as *sermo*, *sermōnis*; *cardo*, *cardinis*.

21. Vocalis numero coëat nisi bina priore,
Casibus obliquis non crescunt nomina primæ,
Nec quæ quarta dedit, dedit aut inflexio quinta.
22. Quæ sequitur primam tantùm producit *Ibēri*.
23. Semper A curtat *ātis* ternæ: sit *dogmātis* index.
24. O breviabit *īnis*: sed porrigit *ēnis* et *ōnis*.
Mensuram variant at in his gentilia quædam.
25. I breve mittit *ītis*. Sed ab EC producitur *ēcis*.
26. In D crementum breve nomina pauca tulerunt.
27. AL mas curtat *ālīs*: sed neutrum protrahit *ālīs*.
Elīs cum *Sōlīs* produc; reliquis breviatis.
28. ON nimis incertum est: EN *īnis* rape: cætera produc.
29. *Aris* ab AR neutro produc: sed demito *bacchar*,
Par cum compositis, *jubar* his cum *nectāre* jungens.
Protrahe *Nar Nāris*, *fūris*, *vēris*, *Recimēris*,
Byzer, *Ser*, et *Iber*, in *ter* Græcum, *æthère* dempto.
Oris ab OR longum est: cum neutris corripe Græca.
Arbōris et *memōris* hrevies, indictaque cuncta.
30. *Atis* ab AS tardant, *anātis* nisi, quæque Latina.
Cætera, sed *vāsis* dempto, correpta dabuntur.
31. ES patrium breviat: demas *locuplesque*, *quiesque*,
Et *mansues*, *hæres*, *merces*, et Græca per *ētis*.
32. Corripit IS crescens patrium: sed porrige *glīris*,
Et quod Romuleum Genitivum format in *ītis*,
Et *Psophis*, *Crenis*, *Nesis*, Græcumque quod in dat.
33. OS patrii crementa dedit producta: sed aufer
Quæ tria correptis gaudent, *bos*, *compos*, et *impos*.
34. US crementa rapit: sed in *ūris*, et *ūtis*, et *ūdīs*,
Quod præit *u* longum est: *Ligus* hinc at tolle, *pecusque*,
Intercusque. Gradus medius producit US *ōris*.
35. YS celerabit *ȳdos*: sed tardè proferet *ȳnis*.
36. Consona cum præit S, patrii penultima curta est.
Hinc *Cyclops*, *seps*, *gryps*, *Cercops*, *plebs*, aufer et *hydrōps*.
37. T breve crementum patrii per *ītis* sibi poscit.
38. Præ *gis* vocalem rapit X. Producito *lex*, *rex*,
EX *īcis* abbreviat, *vibex* nisi. Cætera produc.
Præter *abax*, *smilax*, *atraz*, cum *dropæce*, et *anthrax*,

Fax, et *Atax*, *climaxque*, *panaxque*, *styraxque*, *colaxque* ;
 Quæque *phylaxque*, *coraxque* creant, et cum *nece*, *rectis*
Orba suis, *vicis atque precii* ; cum *appendice*, *fornix*,
Cozendix, *chænixque*, *Cilix*, *natrixque*, *calixque*,
Pix, et *onyx*, *illix*, *histris*, cum *masfiche*, *varix*,
 Queis *Ercycis*, *filicis*, *salicis*, *laricisque*, *nivisque*,
Cappadocis, *calycis*, cum *Naryce*, *præcœce* nectes :
 Adde *dūcis*, pariterque *crūcis*, *nūce* cum *trūce* junctis.
 At patrio variato *Syphox*, cum *Bebryce*, *sandix*.

39. Pluralis casus, si crescit, protrahit A, E,
 Et simul O. *Būbus* dempto, sed corripit I, U.

INCREASE OR CREMENT OF VERBS.

A Verb is said to *increase* when any part of it exceeds the Second Person Singular of the Present of the Indicative Active, by one or more syllables : as, *rogas*, *rogāmus*, *rogabātis*, *rogāmīni*.

40. A verbum crescens auctu producit in omni.
 Excipe crementum *dūre* primum quod breve poscit.
41. E quoque producunt verba increscentia : verūm
 Prima E corripiunt ante *r* duo tempora ternæ.
Rēre sit et *rēris* longum, *bēris* at *bēre* curtum.
 Semper E corripitur præ *ram*, *rim*, *roque* locatum.
 Curtat et interdum *stetērunt*, *dedēruntque* poeta.

Note.—Besides *stetērunt* and *dedērunt*, various other verbs are shortened by the poets in the penult of the Third Person Plural of the Perfect Indicative. Virgil uses *tulērunt* : Horace, *annuērunt*, *vertērunt* : Ovid, *contigērunt*, *defuērunt*, *fuērunt*, *horruērunt*, *præbuērunt*, &c.

42. Corripit I crescens verbum : sed deme *velīmus*,
Nolīmus, *sīmus*, quæque his sata cætera ; jungens
Ivi præteritum, prima incrementaque quartæ.
 Præterito curtabis *īmus* tamen undique : vates
 Exacto variant *rimus*, *ritisque* futuro.
43. O produc verbis crescentibus ; U breve profer.

FINAL SYLLABLES.

A.

44. Casibus A flexum brevia. Sed protrahe sextum,
 Et quintum, Græco quando hic de nomine in AS fit.
 Casibus haud flexum produc. *Itā*, cum *quīdā*, et *ejdā*,
 Et *putā* non verbum subduxeris, *halleluēlijā*.

A in the end of words declined by cases, i. e. in Nouns, and Adjectives, is short : as, *musă, lampadă, Tydeă, bonă, eă*.

Exc. The Ablative of Nouns and Adjectives of the First Declension, and the Vocative of Greek Nouns in *as* of the First and Third Declensions are long : as, *Musă, Æneă, Atlă*.

Note.—Vocatives in *a* of Greek Nouns in *tes* are short : as, *Æetă, Orestă*. Those from Nominatives in *es* are sometimes, though rarely, found long : as, *Anchisă, Æacidă*. But these more commonly follow the general Rule.

A in the end of words not declined by cases, i. e. in Verbs, and indeclinable words, is long : as, *amă, frustră, prætereă, ergă, intră, ă*.

Exc. *Ită, quiă, eă, pută* put adverbially, and *hallelujă*, are short.

Note.—*Alphă, Betă*, the names of letters, have the *a* short.

E.

45. E brevia. Primæ produc, et nomina quintæ Cum natis. Adde pluralia cuncta : secundæ Induperativum socians. Monosyllaba, demptis Encliticis ac syllabicis, quoque longa repones. Adde a mobilibus flexûs quæcunque secundi Manârunt, summique gradûs adverbia quævis. Sed *beně* cum *malě* corripies, *inferně, superně*. Productis *fermē* atque *ferē* jungantur, et *ohē*.

E in the end of a word is short : as, *natě, cubilě, patrě, currě*.

Exc. 1. The following words have *e* long. Nouns of the First and Fifth Declension : as, *Calliopē,* Anchisē* ; *rē* and *diē*, with their Compounds, *quarē, hodiē, &c.* ; Plural Greek Nouns : as, *cetē, Tempē* ; and the Second Per. Sing. of the Imperative of the Second Conjugation : as, *docē, manē*.

Note.—The Doric Vocatives of Greek Nouns are long : as, *Ulyssē, Achillē* ; contracted cases : as, *Diomedē* for *Diomedea* ; the contracted Genitive and Dative of the Fifth Declension : as, *diē, fidē* ; likewise *famē*, which originally belonged to the Fifth. The Imperative *cavē* has the last syllable common. This license is usually extended to *vale, vidē, and responde*, but not on good authority ; in the best writers, where the reading is undisputed, they are always long.

Exc. 2. Monosyllables are long : as, *ē, mē, tē* ; except the enclitic particles, *quě, vě, ně* (interrogative), and the syllabic adjections *ptě, cě, tě* : as, *suaptě, hujuscě, tutě*.

Exc. 3. Adverbs derived from Adjectives of the Second Declen-

* Final *e* is always long when it represents the Greek η.

ston are long : as, *placidē, pulchrē, doctissimē* ; except *benē, malē, infērē,* and *supernē,* which are short. *Fermē, ferē,* and *ohē* are also long.

I.

- 46 I longum pono. Vocitantem corripere Græcis.
His tamen at ternus dabitur crescentibus anceps.
Sic variato *mihi, tibi, cum sibi* ; sed mage curtis.
Vult *ibi, vultque cui, nisi, mox ubi, cum quasi, jungi.*
Sicuti sed breviant, cum *necubi, sicubi* vates.

I in the end of a word is long : as, *dominī, patrī, amavī, ī.*

Exc. 1. The Vocatives of Greek Nouns have the *i* short : as, *Alexī, Amaryllī.*

Note.—The Vocatives of Greek Nouns having *entos* in the Genitive are long : as, *Simois, -entos, Simoī.*

Exc. 2. Of the Datives of Greek Nouns which increase in the Genitive, some are short : as, *Palladī, Minoidī* ; and others are long : as, *Thetidī, Paridī, Tyndaridī.* The Datives and Ablatives Plural in *si* : as, *heroisī,* are short. *Mihi, tibi, sibi, ibi, ubi,* and *cui* (a dissyllable), are common ; *nisi* and *quasi* are always short.

Note.—The Compounds of *ibi, ubi,* and *uti* are peculiar. *Ibi* and *ubi* have the *i* common ; but in *alibi* it is always long, and in *necubi* and *sicubi,* it is always short. The *i* is always long in *uī* and *velutī,* but is always found short in *sicutī.*

O.

47. O commune loces. Dabis at monosyllaba longis,
Græcaque ceu *Didō,* ternum sextumque secundæ,
Et patrium Græcum, atque adverbia nomine nata,
Quō jungens et *eō.* Variant at *denuo, sero,*
Mutuo, postremo, vero : *modō* sed breve pones.
Sæpius *ambo, duo, scio* corripere, et *illico* et *imo,*
Et *cedo da* signans, *ego,* queis *homo, cum cito, junte.*
Sunt aliis variata Gerundia, longa Maroni.
Ergō pro *causā* produc ; secus editur anceps.

O in the end of a word is common : as, *leo, virgo, amo.*

Note.—The poets of the Augustan age very rarely shortened final *o* in Verbs, or in Nouns of the Third Declension. *Sciō* and *nesciō* are often found short, and *credō, putō, rogō, volō,* when used parenthetically or in colloquial discourse. Instances of *o* being shortened in other verbs are very rare. *Homō* is found short in Catullus, *nemō* and *leō* in Ovid, and *mentiō* in the Satires of Horace. The later poets appear to have considered *o* common, and accordingly in their works it is very often found short.

Exc. 1.—Monosyllables are long : as, *ō, dō, stō* ; Greek Nouns : as, *Didō, Sapphō, Athō* (Gen.) ; the Datives and Ablatives of the Second Declension : as, *dominō, boiō* ; Adverbs derived from Adjectives : as, *certō, crebrō, falsō, and ergō*, on account of ; likewise *quō* and *cō*, with the Compounds, *quāvis, quōcunque*.

Exc. 2.—*Deuuo, sero, mutuo, postremo, vero*, are generally long, but sometimes short. *Ambo, duo, scio, illico, imo, cedo* (Defective Verb), *ego, homo*, and *cito*, are commonly short. *Modō*, and its Compounds, *quomodō, dummodō, &c.* are short.

Note.—There appears to be a want of precision in the latter part of the preceding rule. The result of Professor Ramsay's minute examination is as follows : Final *o* in *ambō, ergō, ideō, imō, porrō, postremō, quandō, serō, verō*, is perhaps never found short except in writers posterior to the Augustan age. It is always short in the following words, in good writers : *citō, duō, egō, octō, modō* the Adverb, and its Compounds, *dummodō, postmodō, quomodō, tantummodō*. There does not appear to be any good authority for the distinction which is made in the rule between *ergo*, signifying *on account of*, and *ergo*, signifying *therefore*.

Exc. 3. The Gerund in *dō* is always long in Virgil, but is sometimes found short in the later poets.

U and Y.

48. U semper longis, sed Y raptis jungere oportet.

U in the end of a word is long : as, *vultū, cornū, dictū*.

Y in the end of a word is short : as, *moly, Tiphly*.

B.

49. Corripe B Latium : peregrinum at tendere malim.

B in the end of a word is short : as, *ŏb, ŏb, sŏb*. Words adopted from a foreign language are long : as, *Jōb, Jacōb*.

C.

50. C produc, præter nęc, donęc : sed variabis
Hic bene pronomen : fac verbum jungimus isti.

C in the end of a word is long : as, *ŏc, sŏc, illŏc, dŏc*.

Exc. *Nęc* and *donęc* are short. The Pronoun *hic*, and the Verb *fac*, are common.

Note.—*Hic*, the Adverb is always long ; *hic*, the Pronoun is twice found short in Virgil, but is generally long ; *hoc*, which is also said to be common, is always found long, except in the comic writers. *Fac* appears to be always short.

* Final *o* is always long when it represents the Greek *ω*.

D.

51. D breve ponatur. Variare at Barbara possis.

D in the end of a word is short: as, *ăd*, *apŭd*, *quăd*. Foreign words are common: as, *David*, *Bogud*.

L.

52. L breve sit. Cum *sŏl*, *sāl*, *nīl*, tolluntur Hebræa.

L in the end of a word is short: as, *animāl*, *vigīl*, *consŭl*.

Exc. *Sŏl*, *sāl*, *nīl*, with words adopted from the Hebrew, are long: as, *Daniēl*, *Nabŭl*.

Note.—*Nil* is long, because it is a contraction for *nihil*.

M.

53. M nunc vocalis perimit: rapuère vetusti.

M in the end of a word is cut off before a vowel; the earlier writers often preserved it, and made the syllable short.

N.

54. N produc. Demas EN *īnis* dans, quæque priore Græca per ON casus numero tenuère secundæ; Et quartum casum, si sit brevis ultima recti. Sīn quoque pluralis ternæ conjunge Pelasgum: Forsitān, ĩn, forsān, tamēn, ān, vidēn' insuper addens.

N in the end of a word is long: as, *ēn*, *splēn*, *quān*, *Titān*.

Exc. 1. Nouns in *en*, having *īnis* in the Genitive, are short: as, *carmēn*, *pectēn*; the Singular Cases of Greek Nouns in *on*: as, *Ilīon*;* the Acc. Sing. of Greek Nouns which have the last syllable of the Nom. short: as, *Maiūn*, *Orpheōn*; and *sin*, the Greek termination of the Dat. Plural: as, *Arcasīn*, *Troasīn*.

Exc. 2. The following words are also short: *forsitān*, *īn*, *forsān*, *tamēn*, *ān*, *vidēn'*, *satīn'*.

R.

55. R brevies. Produc cujus dat patrius ēris: Addito *Ibēr*, *aēr*, *æthēr*. Sit *Celtiber* anceps. At *pār*, *fār*, *lār*, *Nār*, quoque *cūr*, *fūr*, adjice longis.

R in the end of a word is short: as, *imbēr*, *patēr*, *Hectōr*, *supēr*.

Exc. Nouns in *er* having *ēris* in the Genitive are long: as, *cratēr*, *vēr*; also, *Ibēr*, *aēr*, *æthēr*, *pār*, with its compounds, *compār*, &c., *fār*, *lār*, *Nār*, *cūr*, *fūr*. *Celtiber* has the last syllable common.

* Nouns in *on* which, in Greek, are written with *o*, are short; those having *ω* are long.

AS.

56. AS produc. Patrio sed *ādīs* quod flectit, *dnasque*
Sit breve : plurales ternæ quibus addito quartos.

AS in the end of a word is long : as, *piētās, mensās, amās.*

Exc. Greek Nouns having *ādīs* or *ādos*, in the Genitive are short : as, *Arcās, lampās* ; also *anās* ; and the Acc. Plural of Greek Nouns of the Third Declension : as, *craterās, Troās.*

Note.—Latin Nouns in *as*, formed after the manner of Greek patronymics, are short : as, *Appiās, Adriās.* Greek Nouns in *as*, which have *antis* in the Genitive, are long : as, *Pallas, -antis.*

ES.

57. Ponitur ES longum. Pluralia corripere Græca
Quæ crescunt ; velut *ēs* de *sum* : *penēs* additur illi ;
Cum neutris ; et queis patrii penultima curta est
Ternæ. Tolle *Cerēs, pariēs, ariēs, abiēs, pēs.*

ES in the end of a word is long : as, *quiēs, amēs, rēs, Circēs.*

Exc. 1. Greek Neuter Nouns, and those which increase in the Genitive, are short : as, *hæppomanēs, Arcadēs, delphinēs* ; also *ēs* from *sum*, with its Compounds *abēs, adēs* ; and the Preposition *penēs.*

Note.—Latin Nouns in *es*, in which *es* represents the Greek *ης*, are long : as, *Alcidēs, Palamedēs* ; and the Nominative and Vocative Plural in *es* of Greek Nouns, which form the Genitive Singular in *eos* : as, *hæresēs, crisēs* ; because in such words the *e* represents the Greek diphthong. E is always short in those words which, in Greek, are written with *ε* : as, in the Vocatives, *Demosthenēs, Socratēs.*

Exc. 2. Nouns of the Third Declension which have the penult of the Genitive short : as, *alēs, alītis, divēs, divitis* ; except *Cerēs, pariēs, ariēs, abiēs, pēs*, with its Compounds *bipēs, tripēs, &c.*, which follow the general rule.

IS.

58. IS brevio. Verùm plurales protraho casus ;
ISque quod in patrio mutatur in *ītis*, et *inīs*,
Aut *entis* ; *gratisque forīs, glīs, vīs* quoque, nomen
Seu verbum fuerit : sic et persona secunda
Protrahit IS, quoties *ītis* plurale reponit.
In subjunctivi *ris* est commune futuro.

IS in the end of a word is short : as, *turrīs, magīs, bīs, īs, Jovīs.*

Exc. 1. Plural Cases are long : as, *pennīs, nobīs, omnīs* for *omneis* ; also Nouns in *is* which have *ītis, īnis, or entis*, in the Genitive : as, *līs, Samnīs, Salamīs, Simoīs* ; likewise *gratīs, forīs, glīs*, and *vīs*, whether it be a Noun or a Verb.

Exc. 2. *Is* in the Second Per. Sing. is long, when the Second Per. Plur. is in *itis*: as, *audis*, *possis*. *Ris* in the Second Per. Sing. of the Future Perfect Indicative, and Perfect Subjunctive, is common.

OS.

59. OS produc. Patrius brevis est, et *compōs*, et *impōs*, Osque *ossis* præbens. Rectos breviato secundæ (O nisi det patrius): neutra his dein addito Graiûm.

OS in the end of a word is long: as, *flōs*, *bonōs*, *vōs*, *Minōs*.

Exc. 1. Greek Genitives are short: as, *Arcadōs*, *Tethyōs*; also *compōs*, *impōs*, and *ōs* (a bone), with its Compound *exōs*.

Exc. 2. Greek Neuter Nouns are short: as, *chaōs*, *melōs*; also Greek Nouns of the Second Declension: as, *Clarōs*,* *Tenedos*; except those which have *o* in the Genitive: as, *Androgeōs*, *Athōs*.

US.

60. US correpta datur. Monosyllaba cum genitivis Ternæ vel quartæ produc: numerique secundi In quartâ primum, quartum, quintumque; et in *ūris*, Dumve *ūtis* patrius, vel in *ūdis*, et *untis*, *ōdis*ve est; Aut quintus fit in *u*; longus tum rectus habetur. Ergo produces venerabile nomen *Jesus*.

US in the end of a word is short: as, *annūs*, *tempūs*, *amamūs*.

Exc. 1. Monosyllables and Genitives of the Third Declension are long: as, *grūs*, *sūs*, *Clitūs*,† *Sapphūs*; also the Gen. Singular, and the Nom. Acc. and Voc. Plural of the Fourth Declension: as, *fructus*; and Nouns of the Third, which have *ūris*, *ūtis*, *ūdis* (the penult long), *untis*, or *ōdis*, in the Genitive: as, *tellūs*, *virtūs*, *incūs*, *Amathūs*, *tripūs*.

Exc. 2. Nouns in *us*, which have *u* in the Vocative, are long: as, *Panthūs* (Voc. *Panthu*); also *Jesus*.

YS.

61. YS junges brevibus. *Tethys* reperitur at anceps. Longaque sunt, rectis aliter quæ casibus YN dant.

YS in the end of a word is short: as, *Capÿs*, *chelÿs*, *chlamÿs*.

Exc. Nouns in *ys*, which have likewise *yn* in the Nom. are long: as, *Gortÿs*. *Tethys* is sometimes found long.

T.

62. T breve semper erit: nisi quondam Syncopa tardet.

* OS is always short in those words which, in Greek, are written with *o*, and long in those in which *os* represents the Greek *ωσ*.

† U in these and similar words represents the Greek diphthong.

T in the end of a word is short : as, *capūt, amāt* ; unless when the preceding Vowel is lengthened by a Syncope : as, *abīt* for *abist*, *amarāt* for *amaverat*.

63. Ultima cujusque est communis Syllaba versūs.

The last syllable of every line may be made long or short, according to the pleasure of the poet.

EXERCISES ON THE RULES FOR THE QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES.

1. Deus, puer, moneo, faciam, eo, ea, meus, tineæ, traho, mihi, nihil, reprehendo, ahenus, cohæreo, dehisco, audiit.

2. Fio, fiunt, fiebam—fieri, fierem—diei, speciei, aciei—rei, fidei, spei—unius, illius, totius—*alius—alterius—ohe, Diana, Io—æŕ, dius, eheu—*aulai, terrai—Pompeius, Caius, Veius.

3. Greek—Simois, Deucalion, Danaë, Hyades—Arion, Ixion, Briseis, Menelaus, Æneas, Peneus, Darius, Medea, Iphigenia, Troes, heroes—Chorea, platea, Malea, Nereides.

4. Bellum, mortem, amant, est, arcessere—pax, exul, thorax—Amazon, gaza, horizon—major, pejor, hujus, cujus, rejicio—*bijugus, quadrijugus—*ariete, abiete, abiegnæ, parietibus, tenuis, gēna, principium, consilium, fluviorum.

5. Agri, peragro, patres, patrius, barathrum, pharetra, illecebra, cathedra, integrum, funebris, muliebris, libri, migro, demigro, nigrum, impigra, ludibrium, reciprocus, mediocris, cochlear, Patroclus, volucris—matres, fratres, acris, atrum, aratrum, theatrum, simulacrum, spectatrix, crebra, tetra, delubrum, salubres, adjutrix—gubernaculum, spectaculum—ablucio, ablatus, obrucio, oblitus, subrideo, quamobrem. Greek—cycnus, Atlas, daphne, Tecmessa.

6. Nil, mi, it, petiit, Juli, cogo, cogito, debeo, nolo, malo, alius, tibicen, sodes, bigæ, scilicet, junior, jucundus, jumentum, motum, fotum, momentum, fomentum, fomes, ala, mala, palus, velum, seni, deni—Phaethon, deero, cui, iidem, deinde.

7. Aurum, musæ, mœnia, Cæsar, Graia, plebeia—præit præustus, præaltus.

8. Amicitia, natura, virgineus, augurium, custodio, oratio, sudacia, felicitas, utilitas, largitio, relatio, ratio, irritus, proditio, superstitio, competitor, onerare, præcipitare, saluber, probabilis, monumentum, munimentum, initium, involucrum, volumen, moveam, moverem, moveram, movissem, legam, legerim, legens, niveus, ferrugineus, regius, ambiguus, plurimus, divinitus, convivium. For the exceptions, see the Rule.

9. Perlego, perlegi, invidet, invidit, perjurus, excido, excido, apparo, appareo, consolor, depeculor, despero, enodo, erudio, investigo, eradico, indico, indico, desolo, enato, consideo, consido, permæneo, permæno, suffoco, suffoco, irritio. See Rule.

11. Prometheus, prologus, propheta, Propontis—prodo, pro-mitto, proveho, promulgo, provincia. See Rule.

12. Separo, semoveo, securus, secretus—diligo, dimitto, di-mico—*dirimo, disertus*; remitto, redamo, refert; vesanus.

13. Laniger, thurifer, opifer, semiviri, omnipotens, armipo-tens, tubicen, cornicen, sacrifico, significo, causidicus, magnifi-cus, multiplex, biceps, bidens, bipatens, triceps, triplex, Trivia, siquidem, Agricola—duodecim, duodeni, sacrosanctus, Argonau-ta, Philomela, philosophus, metropolis, bibliotheca, Cleopatra, hodie.

14. Lucrifacio, agricultura, ludimagister—tibicen, bigæ—biduum, triduum, meridies, pridie, postridie, quotidie—geome-tra, minotaurus, lagopus. See Rule and Note.

15. Veni, vidi, vici, feci, crevi, ivi, movi, fodi—*bibi, scidi, fidi* (findo), *tuli, dedi, steti*. 16. Peperi, cecini, tetigi, pepuli, meminini, pupugi—*cecididi, pepedi*—cucurri, tetendi, momordi, sponpondi, pependi, poposci. 17. Visum, motum, potum, fle-tum, stratum, cretum, cusum—*saturum, citum, litum, situm, statum* (sisto), *itum, datum, rutum* (from ruo: as, *dirutum, obrutum, &c.*), *quitum, ratus*—*insitus, illitus, circumdatus, concitus, excitus, incitus, percitus*. 18. Voco, vocavi, vocatum; clamo, clamavi, clamatum; moneo, monui, monitum—*pono, posui, positum*; *gigno, genui, genitum*: *solvo, solutum*; *volvo, volutum*. 19. Mutatum, aratum, deletum, oletum, minutum, exutum, auditum, cupitum, recensitum, monitum, teritum, placitum. 20. Amaturus, docturus, lecturus, politurus.

44. Penna, galea, regna, bella, sedilia, cornua, bona, meliora, tria, ea, siqua, aliqua—musâ, pennâ, galeâ, eâ, siquâ, aliquâ—a, da, ama, voca, frustra, præterea, interea, erga, extra, intra—*ita, quia, eja, puta, halleluja*—triginta, sexaginta, contra, ultra.

Greek—Aenea, Palla, Atla—Anchisa, Æacida—Oresta, Poly-decta, Thyesta.

45. Domine, nate, cubile, sedile, sermone, rupe, ille, iste, curre, lege, legere, regere, canere, audire, esse, unde, sæpe, dulcè, facilè, sublimè, suavè, impunè, ante, sine, atque—re, die, rabie, quare, hodie, pridie, quotidie, (die, fide *Gen.*), fame—doce, mone, habe, gaude—*cave*—me, te, se, c, de, ne—pen-naque, aliusve, tantane, suapte, hujusce, tute—placide, pulchre, valde, minime, maxime—*bene, male, inferne, superne*—*ferme, fere, ohe*.

Greek—Penelope, Anchise, Tydide—cete, mele, pelage, Tempe—Ulysse, Achille, Diomede (for Diomedea).

46. Domini, classi, audiri, fieri, amavi, fregi, i, viginti, fili, geni, Juli, Ovidi, Virgili—*mihi, tibi, sibi, ibi, ubi, cui*—*nisi, quasi*—*sicuti, necubi, sicubi*—*alibi, veluti*.

Greek—Alexi, Amarylli, Pari, Daphni, Theti—Simoi—Pal-ladi, Minoidi, Tethyi.

47. Leo, sermo, virgo, amo, peto, esto, ero, volo, octo—*scio, nescio, credo, puto, rogo, volo, homo, nemo, leo, mentio*—o, do,

sto, pro, proh—domino, genero, vento, bono, pulchro—crebro, falso, certo, raro, merito—*quo, eo, quocunque, quovis, eodem—denuo, sero, mutuo, postremo, vero, adeo, ideo—modo, ambo, duo, scio, nescio, illico, imo, cedo* (give thou), *ego, homo, cito—quomodo, dummodo, postmodo—vigilando, cunctando—ergo.* Greek—Dido, Atho, Clio, Alecto, Sappho.

48. Cornu, fructu, manu, dictu, lectu, tu, Panthu—moly, chely, Tiphy. 49. Ab, ob, sub—Job, Jacob. 50. Ac, sic, illuc, hic (here), lac, huc, duc—*nec, donec, fac—hic* (this), hoc. 51. Ad, apud, illud, quid, id, David. 52. Animal, vigil, consul, Hannibal, mel, fel, nihil, procul—*sol, sal, nil—Daniel, Israel, Nabul.*

54. Non, en, Siren, Hymen, Pan, Titan, quin, Orion, Ænean—carmen, pecten, nomen, agmen, tibicen—*forsitan, forsan, in, an, tamen, viden', satin'.* Greek—Rhodon, Cerberon, Pelion, Ilion—Maian, Parin, Thetin, Ityn—Athōn, Androgeōn, Demoleōn—Arcasin, Troasin, heroisin.

55. Calcar, imber, vir, cor, honor, vultur, amor, sequor, ter, per, præter—crater, ver, stater, Ser—*aër, æther, Iber—Celtiber—par, fur, lar, Nar, cur, fur.*

56. Mensas, Æneas, pietas, amas, nefas, Arpinas, Antias, Pallas (a man's name)—Pallas (a goddess), lampas, Arcas, Ap-pias, Adrias, anas—heroas, delphinas, lampadas.

57. Rupes, patres, quies, res, dies, ames, doces, esscs, toties, quoties—*es, ades, potes—penes—miles, limes, eques, dives—Ceres, paries, aries, abies, pes, sonipes, quadrupes.* Greek—Anchises, Atrides, Penelopes, Circes—Tritones, Troes, Amazones, dæmones, Socrates (Voc.)—cacoëthes, hippomanes—hereses, phrases.

58. Classis, patris, is, quis, amabis, legis, legitis, ais, bis, magis, fortassis—pennis, viris, regnis, nobis, vobis, illis, quis for quibus, omnis for omnes, humilis for humiles—Quiris, Samnis, lis, Salamis, Simois—*gratis, ingratis, foris, glis, vis, vis, quamvis—audis, venis, fis, sis, adsis, possis, velis, nolis, malis—dede-ris, fueris, dixeris, placâris.*

59. Flos, dominos, custos, bonos, vos, heros—*compos, impos, os* (a bone), *exos.* Greek—Minos, Androgeos, Athos—Claros, Tenedos, Ilios—chaos, melos, Argos—Arcados, Pallados, Orpheos, Prometheos.

60. Annus, tempus, montibus, rebus, fructus (Nom. & Voc. Sing.), legimus, sumus, penitus, tenus—jus, rus, grus, plus, sus—fructus, luctus, portus, lacus—tellus, salus, servitus, palus, Amathus, tripus, Œdipus. Greek—Cliûs, Mantûs, Eratûs, Sapphûs—Panthus, Jesus.

61. Capys, chelys, Erinnyes—Phorcys, Trachys—Tethys.

62. Et, at, ut, tot, quot, amat, docet, legat, audivit, abît.

SCANNING.

Scanning is the division of a verse into the several *Feet* of which it is composed.

A verse is a certain number of syllables disposed so as to form a line of poetry.

A Verse, when it contains the exact number of syllables, is called *Acatalectic*; when it wants one syllable at the end to complete the measure, it is called *Catalectic*; when it wants two syllables, it is called *Brachycatalectic*; when it has a redundant syllable or foot, it is called *Hypercatalectic*, or *Hypermeter*.

A Foot is a portion of a Verse consisting of two or more syllables.

The feet most commonly employed in Latin verse are the following:—

1. *A Spondee*, which consists of two long syllables : as, *rūpēs*.
2. *An Iambus*—a short and a long syllable : as, *dōcēs*.
3. *A Trochee*—a long and short syllable : as, *nātūs*.
4. *A Pyrrhic*—two short syllables : as, *dēs*.
5. *A Dactyl*—a long and two short syllables : as, *pōnērē*.
6. *An Anapæst*—two short and a long syllable : as, *bōnītās*.
7. *A Tribrach*—three short syllables : as, *lēgērē*.
8. *A Choriambus*—a long, two short, and a long syllable : as, *cōmmēmōrās*.

CÆSURA.

Cæsura is the syllable which remains in the end of a word after the completion of a foot.

The *Cæsura* has received various names from the different positions which it occupies in the verse. When it comes after the first foot, or falls on the third half-foot, it is called *Triemimēris*, or the *Tricimēmeral Cæsura*; when it falls on the fifth half-foot, it is called *Penthemimēris*; when it falls on the seventh half-foot, it is called *Hepthemimēris*; when it falls on the ninth half-foot, it is called *Enneemimēris* : as,

Ille la-tus nive-um mol-li ful-tus hya-cintho.—*Virg.*

where *tus*, *um*, *li*, *tus*, are examples of the *Triemimēris*, the *Penthemimēris*, the *Hepthemimēris*, and the *Enneemimēris*.

The *Cæsura* is commonly a long syllable; but, when it falls on a syllable naturally short, it sometimes renders it long : as,

Omnia vincit am-ōr, et nos cedamus amori.—*Ovid.*

The lengthening of a short syllable in the *cæsura* may probably be accounted for by the circumstance that the ancients in reciting their verses were in the habit of resting the voice emphatically on the *cæsural* syllables, and longer time being thus assigned to them in pronunciation, they would be artificially lengthened, though naturally short.

FIGURES IN SCANNING.

Figures in Scanning comprehend the various changes which are made upon words to adapt them to the Verse.

SYNALÆPHA.

Synalæpha is the elision of the final Vowel or Diphthong, when the following word begins with a vowel : as,

Conticuere omnes intentique ora tenebant.—*Virg.*

The Interjections *o*, *heu*, and *ah*, are not elided : as,

O et de Latiâ, o et de gente Sabinâ.—*Ovid.*

Other long Vowels and Diphthongs sometimes remain un-elided, and are then generally made short : as,

Glaucō, et Panopeā et Inoo Melicertæ.—*Virg.*

ECTHILIPSIS.

Ecthlipsis is the elision of *M* with the preceding Vowel, when the following word begins with a vowel : as,

O curas hominum ! o quantum est in rebus inane !—*Pers.*

Sometimes, however, the syllable is not elided : as,

Et tantum venerata virum, hunc sedula curet.—*Tib.*

SYNÆRESIS.

Synæresis is the contraction of two Vowels, which naturally make separate syllables, into one : as, *Phathon*, for *Pha-cthon* ; *aureâ*, for *aure-â*.

Inarime Jovis imperiis impōsta Typhōeo.—*Virg.*

Synæresis is frequently employed in the following words :

Antehac, *anteit*, *alveo*, *eadem*, *eodem*, *cui*, *huic*, *deest*, *deerat*, *deerit*, *dehinc*, *dein*, *deinceps*, *deinde*, *dii*, *diis*, *ii*, *iidem*, *iisdem*, &c.

I and *u* are frequently changed into *j* and *v*, and joined, in pronunciation, with the following vowel : as, *abjete*, for *abiete* ; *genva*, for *genua*.

Ædificat, sectâque intexunt abjēte costas.—*Virg.*

Genva labant, gelido concrevit frigore sanguis.—*Virg.*

DIÆRESIS.

Diæresis is the division of a Diphthong into two syllables : as, *aulâi* for *aulæ* ; *süadent* for *süadent*.

Aulâi in medio libabant pocula Bacchi.—*Virg.*

J and *v* are sometimes changed into *i* and *u*, and form separate syllables : as, *subiēcta*, for *subjecta* ; *siliüæ*, for *silvæ*.

Si qua ferventi subiecta Cancro est.—*Senec.*

Aurarum et siliüæ metu.—*Hor.*

DIFFERENT KINDS OF VERSE.

I. HEXAMETER.

Hexameter or Heroic verse consists of six feet, of which the fifth is a Dactyl, and the sixth a Spondee; the other four may be either Dactyls or Spondees indiscriminately: as.

Títýřě- tū pătŭ- læ řěcŭ- bāns sŭb- tĕgmĭnĕ- fāgi.—*Virg.*

Intŏn- sĭ crĭ- nĕs lŏng- gā cĕr- vicĕ řlŭ- ěbāt.—*Tib.*

Sometimes a Spondee occurs in the fifth place; whence verses so constructed are called *Spondaic*: as,

Cārā dĕ- ūm řŭbŏ- lĕs māg- nŭm Jŏvĭs- Incrĕ- mĕntŭm.—*Virg.*

Spondaic verses are sometimes employed in solemn and mournful descriptions, to express dignity, gravity, &c., and generally end in a word of four syllables, with a Dactyl in the fourth foot.

II. PENTAMETER.

Pentameter verse consists of five feet. It is commonly divided into two parts; the former consisting of two feet, either Dactyls, or Spondees, and a Cæsura; the latter always containing two Dactyls and a Cæsura: as,

Cārminĭ- bŭs vĭv- ěs- tĕmpŭs ĭn- ŏmnĕ mĕ- ĭs.—*Ovid.*

This verse is generally combined with Hexameter in alternate lines, and from this union is constituted, what is termed *Elegiac verse*.

III. ASCLEPIADEAN.

Asclepiadĕan verse consists of a Spondee, a Dactyl, a Cæsura, and two Dactyls: as,

Maĕcĕ- nās ātā- vĭs- ědĭtĕ- řĕgĭbŭs.—*Hor.*

This species of verse, which is otherwise called *Choriambic Trimeter Acatalectic*, may also be scanned by a Spondee, two Choriambi, and an Iambus.

IV. GLYCONIAN.

Glyconian Verse consists of three feet; a Spondee, and two Dactyls: as,

Rĕddās- ĭncŏlŭ- mĕm přĕcŏr.—*Hor.*

This species of verse, is otherwise called *Choriambic Dimeter Acatalectic*, and may be scanned by a Spondee, a Choriambus, and an Iambus. Glyconian verse is usually combined with Asclepiadean.

V. SAPPHIC and ADONIAN.

Sapphic verse consists of five feet; a Trochee, a Spondee, a Dactyl, and two Trochees: as,

Jām sĕ- tĭs tĕr- řĭs nĭvĭs- ātquĕ- dĭrĕ.—*Hor.*

Adonian verse, otherwise called *Dactylic Dimeter Catalectic*, consists of a Dactyl and a Spondee: as,

Těrrůt- ůrbēm.—*Hor.*

Sapphic and Adonian verses are always combined by the lyric poets, in stanzas, consisting of three lines of the former, followed by one of the latter.

VI. PHERECRATIAN.

Pherecratian verse consists of three feet; a Spondee, a Dactyl, and a Spondee: as,

Quāmvis- Pōntičă- pīnūs.—*Hor.*

Pherecratian verse is otherwise called *Choriambic Dimeter Catalectic*, and may also be scanned by a Spondee, a Choriambus, and a Catalectic syllable. This verse is combined by Horace with Asclepiadean and Glyconian.

VII. PHALEUCIAN.

Phaleucian verse consists of five feet; a Spondee, a Dactyl, and three Trochees: as,

Sūmmām- nēc mětŭ- ās dĩ- ěm nēc- ōptēs.—*Mart.*

VIII. ALCAIC OR HORATIAN.

The Alcaic or Horatian stanza consists of four lines, of which the first two are *Greater Dactylic Alcaic*; the third, *Archilochian Iambic*; and the fourth, *Lesser Dactylic Alcaic*.

Greater Dactylic Alcaic consists of a Spondee (varied sometimes by an Iambus), an Iambus, a Cæsura, and two Dactyls: as,

Cēdēs- cōēm- tīs- sālťibŭs- ět dōmō.—*Hor.*

Vīdēs- ůt āl- tā- stēt nīvē- cāndīdŭm.—*Id.*

Archilochian Iambic has a Spondee in the first and third places, an Iambus in the second and fourth, with a Cæsura in the end of the line. The first foot is sometimes an Iambus: as,

Nēc sŭ- mīt aŭt- pōnīt- sēcŭ- res.—*Hor.*

Stětē- řě cāu- saē cŭr- pěrī- řěnt.—*Id.*

Lesser Dactylic Alcaic consists of two Dactyls followed by two Trochees: as,

Arbĭťrĭ- ō pōpŭ- lāris- aŭræ.—*Hor.*

Alcaic verse is called *Horatian* from its being used by Horace more frequently than any other description of lyric metre.

IX. IAMBIC.

There are two kinds of Iambic verse, the one consisting of four feet, the other of six. The former is called *Iambic*

Dimeter Catalectic; the latter, *Iambic Trimeter Acatalectic*.

Iambic Verse originally admitted of no other foot but the Iambus : as,

Inār. sīt aē. stūō. sūs.—*Hor.*

Sūs. ēt īp. sã Rō. mǎ vī. rībūs. rūit.—*Id.*

Afterwards, other feet, as the Spondee, the Dactyl, the Anapæst, and the Tribach were admitted into the first, third, and fifth places, and sometimes, but very rarely, into the second and fourth. The last continued invariably an Iambus : as,

Cānīdī. ǎ rō. dēns pōl. līcēm.—*Hor.*

Vīdē. rě prōpě. rāntēs. dōmūm.—*Id.*

Quōquō. scēlēs. tī rūi. tīs aūt. cūr dēx. tērīs.—*Id.*

Pāvīdūm. quě lěpō. rum aūt. ād. vēnām. lāquēō. grūēm.—*Id.*

Alītī. būs āt. quě cānī. būs hōmī. cīdam Hēc. tōrēm.—*Id.*

Comic writers sometimes use an Iambic verse consisting of eight feet, and therefore called *Tetrameter*, or *Octonarius*.

Besides these, the following kinds of verse are employed in the lyric writings of Horace :

1. *Dactylic Trochaic Archilochian*, consisting of seven feet, of which the first four are either Dactyls or Spondees, the remaining three are Trochees : as,

Sōlvītūr. ācrīs hī. ēms grā. tā vīcě. vērīs. ēt Fā. vōnī.—*Hor.*

This verse is used in alternate lines with the following, B. I. Od. IV.

2. *Iambic Trimeter Catalectic*, consisting of five feet and a Cæsura, and admitting of the same varieties as Iambic Trimeter. It must, however, have an Iambus in the fifth place, on account of the deficiency of a syllable in the sixth : as,

Trāhūnt. quě sīc. cās mā. chīnāē. cārī. nās.—*Hor.*

This verse is used B. I. Od. IV. and is combined with the following in alternate lines, B. II. Od. XVIII.

3. *Trochaic Dimeter Catalectic*, consisting of three Trochees, with a Cæsura : as,

Nōn ē. būr nē. que aūrē. ūm.

4. The eighth Ode of the First Book contains two kinds of verse ; *Choriambic Dimeter*, consisting of a Dactyl and two Trochees ; and *Greater Sapphic*, consisting of a Trochee, a Spondee, a Dactyl, a Cæsura, another Dactyl, and two Trochees : as,

Lýdīā. dīc pēr. ōmnēs

Tě dē. ōs ō. rō Sýbā. rīm. cūr prōpě. rēs ǎ. mǎndo.

5. *Greater Asclepiadean* or *Choriambic Pentameter*, consisting of

a Spondee, a Dactyl, a Cæsura, another Dactyl and Cæsura, and two Dactyls : as,

Tū ně- quæšič- řis- scirě ně- fās- quēm mīhī- quēm tībī.

This verse is used, B. I. Odes XI. and XVIII. ; and B. IV. Od. X. It may also be measured by a Spondee, three Choriambi, and an Iambus.

6. *Dactylic Tetrameter Acatalectic*, consisting of the last four feet of Hexameter : as,

Aūt Ephě- sūm bīma- řivě Cō- řinthī.
O fōr- tēs pē- jōrāquě- pāssi.

This verse is combined in alternate lines with Hexameter, in the 7th and 28th Odes of the First Book, and in the 12th Epode.

7. *Ionic a minore*, employed B. III. Od. XII. may be divided into eight feet, consisting of a Pyrrhic and a Spondee alternately : as,

Mīsě- rārum ěst- něque ā- mōrī- dāřě- lūdūm- něquě- dūlcī.

8. *Dactylic Trimeter Catalectic*, otherwise called the *Lesser Archilochian*, consisting of two Dactyls and a Cæsura : as,

Arbōřī- būsquě cō- mæ.

This verse is combined with Hexameter in alternate lines, B. IV. Od. VII.

9. The 11th Epode consists of *Iambic Trimeter* in the first verse, and, in the second, of the latter part of *Pentameter*, followed by *Iambic Dimeter*, which is called *Archilochian Elegiac* : as,

Scriběřě- věřsicū- lōs- āmō- řě pēr- cūssūm- grāvī.

10. The 13th Epode, in the second verse, consists of *Iambic Dimeter*, followed by the latter half of *Pentameter*, and is called *Iambelegiac* : as,

Nīvēs- quě dē- dūcūnt- Jōvēm- nūnc mārě- nānc sīlū- ſæ.

METRICAL TABLE
OF THE
ODES OF HORACE.

B. Ode.	M.	B. Ode.	M.	B. Ode.	M.
I. 1.	III.	II. 1.	VIII.	III. 19.	IV, III.
2.	V.	2.	V.	20.	V.
3.	IV, III.	3.	VIII.	21.	VIII.
4.	1, 2.	4.	V.	22.	V.
5.	III, VI, IV.	5.	VIII.	23.	VIII.
6.	III, IV.	6.	V.	24.	IV, III.
7.	I, 6.	7.	VIII.	25.	IV, III.
8.	4.	8.	V.	26.	VIII.
9.	VIII.	9.	VIII.	27.	V.
10.	V.	10.	V.	28.	IV, III.
11.	5.	11.	VIII.	29.	VIII.
12.	V.	12.	III, IV.	30.	III.
13.	IV, III.	13.	VIII.	IV. 1.	IV, III.
14.	III, VI, IV.	14.	VIII.	2.	V.
15.	III, IV.	15.	VIII.	3.	IV, III.
16.	VIII.	16.	V.	4.	VIII.
17.	VIII.	17.	VIII.	5.	III, IV.
18.	5.	18.	3, 2.	6.	V.
19.	IV, III.	19.	VIII.	7.	I, 8.
20.	V.	20.	VIII.	8.	III.
21.	III, VI, IV.	III. 1.	VIII.	9.	VIII.
22.	V.	2.	VIII.	10.	5.
23.	III, VI, IV.	3.	VIII.	11.	V.
24.	III, IV.	4.	VIII.	12.	III, IV.
25.	V.	5.	VIII.	13.	III, VI, IV.
26.	VIII.	6.	VIII.	14.	VIII.
27.	VIII.	7.	III, VI, IV.	15.	VIII.
28.	I, 6.	8.	V.	Ep. 1—10.	IX.
29.	VIII.	9.	IV, III.	11.	IX, 9.
30.	V.	10.	III, IV.	12.	I, 6.
31.	VIII.	11.	V.	13.	I, 10.
32.	V.	12.	7.	14.	I, IX.
33.	III, IV.	13.	III, VI, IV.	15.	I, IX.
34.	VIII.	14.	V.	16.	I, IX.
35.	VIII.	15.	IV, III.	17.	IX.
36.	IV, III.	16.	III, IV.	Secular	
37.	VIII.	17.	VIII.	Hymn.	V.
38.	V.	18.	V.		

INDEX

TO THE IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES
CONTAINED IN THE APPENDIX.

The Numbers refer to the Sections of the Appendix, from page 93 to 107.

A					
Accitu	26	Apis	15	Bilbĭlis	8
Acclivus	48	Apium	31	Bilis	33
Achilli	6	Aplustre	39	Bipennis	13
Acta	38	Apollināres	35	Bonum	40
Admonĭtu	26	Aprilis	13	Bos	16
Adolescens	54	Aquālis	9	Braccæ	37
Ædes	40	Arbor	39	Brevia	38
Ædilĭs	13	Arcānus	55	Bucolĭca	35
Æneādūm	2	Arduus	56	Buris	7
Æquālis	55	Argilla	33		
Aer	10, 32	Argos	21		
Æstĭva	38	Argutiæ	37	C	
Æther	10, 32, 39	Arma	38	Cacoëthes	28
Affabĭlis	55	Artĭfex	42, 47	Cæpe	25
Affĭnis	13	Astu	27	Cæter	47
Agathocli	6	Astus	27	Canālis	13
Album	34	Aulāi	1	Cancelli	36
Albus	56	Aurāi	1	Cani	36
Ales	42, 47	Auris	9	Cannābis	7, 11
Alĭquis	46	Aurum	31	Canōrus	56
Alĭquot	43	Auxilium	39, 40	Capus	39
Alius	46	Avernus	18	Carbāsus	20
Allobrōgas	17	Avis	9, 13	Carcer	40
Almus	56			Carnĭfex	47
Alvear	39	B		Caro	15
Amabĭlis	55	Baccar	14	Carthagĭne	13
Amarācus	39	Bacchanalia	35	Casse	26
Ambāge	26	Bacūlus	39	Cassis	39
Amnis	13	Bætĭs	8, 11	Castrum	40
Amussis	7	Balneum	23	Celer	42, 47
Anceps	42	Balteus	39	Celēres,	36
Ancile	39	Barathrum	34	Cepa	39
Angiportus	39	Batillus	39	Cete	28
Anguis	13	Bellaria	38	Chaos	29
Anterior	55	Benefĭcus	51	Charĭtes	37
Antes	36	Benevōlus	51	Cholĕra	33
Anūbis	8	Bicorpor	47	Cibaria	28
Aphractus	39	Bigæ	37	Citer	50
		Bijūgis	48	Civilis	55
				Civis	13

Classis	13	Dispar	42	Feriæ	37
Clavis,	9, 12	Ditiōnis	29	Fili	3
Clitellæ	37	Diu	26	Fimus	32
Clypeus	39	Diuturnus	54	Finis	13, 40
Codicilli	36	Dives	42, 47, 50	Flabra	38
Cœlebs	41	Divitiæ	37	Flebĭlis	55
Cœlicŏlŭm	2	Dos	15	Flexanĭmus	48
Cælum	21			Fœnum	34
Cohors	15		E	Fori	36
Colluvies	39	Ebur	34	Fortūna	40
Comis	47	Effrēnus	48	Fraga	38
Comitium	40	Egēnus	56	Frenum	22
Compāges	39	Elēgi	39	Frugālis	55
Compar	42	Elephantus	39	Frux	29
Compēdis	27	Elisābet	25	Fugitĭvus	56
Compos	41, 47	Elysium	21	Fustis	13
Concŏlor	41, 47	Epos	28		
Conger	39	Epŭlum	23		G
Consors	42	Ergŏ	26	Gausāpa	39
Copia	40	Essēda	39	Gelu	34, 39
Cor	15	Euphrātes	10	Gerræ	37
Cos	15	Eventus	39	Gibbus	39
Crepundia	38	Exanĭmus	48	Gloria	33
Crocus	39	Excubiæ	37	Glutĭnum	39
Cubĭtus	39	Exos	47	Gracĭlis	49
Cucūmis	7	Exsequiæ	37	Grates	28
Cunabŭla	38	Exsomnia	48	Gratia	40
Cunæ	37	Exspes	44	Grus	39
Cupedia	40	Extā	38	Gryps	15
Cutis	9, 12, 33	Extēr	50	Gummis	7
		Exuviæ	37		
	D		F		H
Daphnis	6			Habĭlis	55
Daps	29	Facetiæ	37	Hebes	47
Declĭvis	48, 55	Facĭlis	49	Heros	10
Degēner	42, 47, 56	Facultas	40	Hespērus	32
Delicium	23	Fæx	30	Hiems	28
Delie	4	Fama	33	Hierosolŷma	35
Delphin	10	Fames	33	Hilāris	48
Deses	47	Familiāris	13	Hilum	34
Deterior	52	Far	14, 28	Hortus	40
Dexter	50	Fas	28	Hospes	41
Dica	28	Fascis	40	Hospitalis	55
Dicis	26	Fasti	36	Humĭlis	49
Dido	6	Fauce	15, 26	Humus	33
Dilucŭlum	34	Fax	30	Hyberna	38
Diluvium	39	Febris	9		
Dindŷmus	18	Februa	38		I
Diræ	37	Femĭnis	28	Idus	37

Nobilis	55	Pestifer	56	Quantus	46
Noctu	26	Phalēræ	37	Quicunque	46
Nonæ	37	Pistrīna	39	Quidam	46
Novus	53	Pituīta	33	Quies	33
Nox	15	Pius	4, 53	Quilibet	46
Nugæ	37	Pix	33	Quiris	15
Nullus	46	Plāga	40	Quisque	46
Nummum	5	Plebs	33, 39	Quot	43
Nundinæ	37	Plerique	45	Quotcunque	43
Nup̄erus	53	Plus	45	Quotquot	43
Nuptiæ	37	Poēma	16	Quotus	46
		Pondo	25		
		Pontus	32		
		Posteri	36	R	
Obsidio	39	Posterus	50	Rapum	39
Occiput	13	Postis	13	Rastrum	22
Ocior	52	Potis	44	Ravis	7
Olympia	35	Præceps	42	Redux	47
Op̄era	40	Præcordia	38	Regalis	55
Op̄imus	54	Præpes	47	Reliquiæ	37
Opis	15, 28, 40	Præstigiæ	37	Rēpetundarum	27
Opus	25	Prætextus	39	Reses	47
Orbis	13	Preci	28	Restis	9, 12
Orestes	10	Precox	56	Rivalis	13
Orgia	38	Primitiæ	37	Ros	30
Os	15, 30	Primoris	45	Rostrum	40
Osiris	8	Principium	40	Rudis	13
Ostrea	39	Prior	52	Ruma	39
		Procēres	36	Rus	13, 28
		Proclivis	48	Ruscum	39
		Proles	30, 33		
		Promptu	26	S	
Pan	10	Pronus	54	Sacer	53
Pangæus	18	Propinquus	55	Sal	14, 34, 40
Par	14, 42, 53	Propior	52	Salebræ	37
Parentalia	38	Puber	47	Salinæ	37
Parietina	37	Pubes	33	Salum	30
Pars	13, 40	Pubis	41, 47	Salus	33
Particeps	42	Pugil	13	Salutaris	55
Pater-familias	1	Pugillares	36	Samnis	15
Pauci	45	Pulvis	32	Sanguis	32
Pauper	41, 47	Puppis	9	Satias	30
Pax	33	Pus	34	Satur	54
Pecūdis	29	Pusillanimis	48	Scalæ	37
Pclāgus	34	Pylades	10	Scopæ	37
Pelvis	9			Securis	9, 12
Penates	36			Segmen	39
Penum	34			Sementis	9, 12
Penus	32, 39			Semianimis	48
Peplus	39			Seminēcis	45
Pergāmus	20				
Persuāsus	53	Q			
		Quadrīgæ	37		
		Qualis	46		

Semis	25	Supērus	50	Tros	10
Semisomnus	48	Suppetiæ	27	Tulli	3
Senectus	31	Supplex	42, 47	Turris	9
Senex	41, 54	Sus	16	Tussis	7
Separ	42	Syracūsæ	35		
Sepes	39	Syrtis	8	U	
September	13			Uber	42, 47
Septunx	15	T		Uterior	52
Sequior	55	Tabes	28	Ultrix	47
Serāpis	8	Tabum	28	Unguis	13
Sestertiūm	5	Tænārus	18	Utensilia	38
Sextans	15	Talaria	39	Uter	15
Sibīlus	39	Tantundem	44	Uter	46
Similis	49	Tartārus	18		
Sināpis	7, 11	Taygētus	18	V	
Sinister	50	Tellus	33	Valvæ	37
Sinus	39	Tempe	28	Vas	24
Sitis	7, 11, 33	Tenebræ	37	Vectis	13
Situs	30	Tenellus	56	Venia	33
Sobōles	30, 33	Teres	47	Vepres	28
Sodālis	13	Tesqua	38	Ver	34
Sol	30	Thermæ	37	Verbēris	27
Sons	47	Thermopylæ	35	Versicōlor	56
Sopor	32	Thus	28	Vesper	27
Sordis	29	Tibēris	8	Vespēra	33
Sors	13	Tignus	39	Veternus	32, 39
Sospes	41, 47, 56	Tigris	11	Vetus	41, 50
Sphinx	15	Tonitrus	39	Vicis	29
Sponsalia	38	Toral	39	Victrix	47
Spontis	27	Torcūlar	39	Vigil	42, 47
Stabilis	55	Tot	43	Vindiciæ	37
Statīva	38	Totīdem	43	Virus	34
Stramen	39	Transtra	38	Vis	7
Strigīlis	9, 12	Tricæ	37	Viscum	34, 39
Sublīmis	48	Tricorpor	41	Vitrum	34
Suffīmen	39	Tricuspis	41	Vocālis	55
Supellex	13, 33	Trigæ	37	Volucris	13, 42
Supēri	36	Tripes	41	Volūpe	44
Superstēs	41, 47	Triticum	31	Vulgus	34, 39

THE END.

